

https://theses.gla.ac.uk/

Theses Digitisation:

https://www.gla.ac.uk/myglasgow/research/enlighten/theses/digitisation/

This is a digitised version of the original print thesis.

Copyright and moral rights for this work are retained by the author

A copy can be downloaded for personal non-commercial research or study, without prior permission or charge

This work cannot be reproduced or quoted extensively from without first obtaining permission in writing from the author

The content must not be changed in any way or sold commercially in any format or medium without the formal permission of the author

When referring to this work, full bibliographic details including the author, title, awarding institution and date of the thesis must be given

Enlighten: Theses <u>https://theses.gla.ac.uk/</u> research-enlighten@glasgow.ac.uk Aspects of Pathogenicity of Streptococcus pyogenes Group A

Badaruddin A. Memon

Presented for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in the Faculty of Science , University of Glasgow .

School of Biological Sciences Department of Microbiology

.

September 1991

ProQuest Number: 10644287

All rights reserved

INFORMATION TO ALL USERS The quality of this reproduction is dependent upon the quality of the copy submitted.

In the unlikely event that the author did not send a complete manuscript and there are missing pages, these will be noted. Also, if material had to be removed, a note will indicate the deletion.



ProQuest 10644287

Published by ProQuest LLC (2017). Copyright of the Dissertation is held by the Author.

All rights reserved. This work is protected against unauthorized copying under Title 17, United States Code Microform Edition © ProQuest LLC.

> ProQuest LLC. 789 East Eisenhower Parkway P.O. Box 1346 Ann Arbor, MI 48106 – 1346

Keas 9005 Copy2



,

.

### **Dedication**

I should like to dedicate this thesis to my late respected father, Allah dino M. Memon for his vigorous determination to scatter knowledge and education .

#### Acknowledgements

I should like to take this opportunity to thank Professor John H. Freer for giving me placement to do research in this department and for his guidance, supervision, stimulating disussions throughout this work and for reading and commenting of this manuscript.

I am most grateful to Dr. T.H. Birkbeck for his continued encouragement, supervision, profound enthusisam, stimulating discussions throughought this work, patience and reading this manuscript.

I am indebted to Professor Joseph E. Alouf, Institut Pasteur, Paris, for the gift of strain C2O3S which produces a high level of Streptolysin S, Dr. Mike Kehoe, University of Newcastle, for giving me the formula for the chemically defined medium for streptococci and for the gift of purified M protein, and to Professor James B. Dale, University of Tennessee, Memphis, U.S.A for gift of M protein.

In the preparation of this manuscript I should like to thank Professor A.C. Wardlaw for reading the manuscript and for his valuable criticisms and suggestions and also thank him for his good humour and timely suggestion for using a bicycle, which in fact, saved me a lot of time and kept me fit.

I am also thankful to Dr. T. H. Birkbeck for the use of his bicycle for almost one year.

Thanks are also due to the staff of the animal house of this department for good humour and special thanks to Mr. Hugh Shannon and Dr. Roger Parton for guidance and assistance in collecting rabbit peritoneal polymorphonuclear neutrophils.

Gratitude is expressed to Professor John Lackie for his

-: v-

invaluable guidance and suggestions in operating the luminometer and providing rabbit peritoneal polymorphonuclear neutrophils.

I should like to take this opportunity to thank Professor John H. Freer for introducing me to "a world of cheeses" which was in fact my first experience here in 1987. During my research, Professor John H. Freer introduced to me many different kinds of cheeses for which I have developed a good taste!.

Thanks are also due to Dr.Carol Mackie for her valuable discussions during my research on iron, Dr.Rob Aitken for guidance in computing, Bronwen Billcliffe for technical assistance in column chromatography, Mr. Alex Elis and Mr.I.McKie for photographic services.

I am also thankful to all the members of the Microbiology Department, specially Mrs. Ann Mosson and Mrs. Mulu Gedle for their friendliness and good nature and all the ladies in the media room for good humour.

I am also grateful to the Ministry of Science and Technology, Government of Pakistan, for the award of a studentship.

I would like to thank my family, specially to great Mum, and friends for their love and unending support without which this thesis would never have been completed.

Finally, my thanks also go to Yasmeen Kazi for her good humour and valuable discussions during my research.

Bacteria.....and We!

You the mini enemies..... You the mini enemies, unavoidable ! Adverse effects donated, but undesirable ! Life and health without you, miserable ! You the mini.....

Equipped with conventional and ultra-mutated arms, Can walk and dance with graceful movements , Rest, react, and rule, still survive with distinct postures! you the mini.....

Behave as friends, foes and non-aligned, Opportunists, thou, but limited and needed, Criminals, thieves, bandits, yet undefeated! you the mini.....

Potent and powerful, harassed and hunters, Survive and strive; even engulfed, increase and inducers, Localized or generalized, shambles or worse ! You the mini.....

Badar Memon

#### Summary

This thesis has sought to characterize some of the factors that influence the production, purification and toxicity of streptolysin S (SLS) from *Streptococcus pyogenes* group A. Two strains, C203S and 55903M, were examined for the production of SLS. Of these, C203S produced the highest yield. Production of the lysin in brain heart infusion broth (BHI, Difco) supplemented with 1% (w/v) maltose and 2% (w/v) sodium bicarbonate (BHI-BM), was maximal between the early and late exponential phases of growth. SLS production was examined in both strains grown in BHI-BM (Oxoid) and BHI-BM (Difco). Cultures in the latter medium gave the higher yields of SLS.

For intensive production of SLS, a procedure involving fourteen "inductions" was carried out on the same pellet of bacteria, which was repeatedly resuspended in induction buffer and stimulated each time with RNA-core. SLS was synthesized de novo during each induction cycle, and inhibitors of protein synthesis such as chloramphenicol blocked its formation. The combined material from the 14 inductions (crude SLS) was further purified by hydroxylapatite column chromatography. The purified product had a specific activity of 3.5X10<sup>5</sup> haemolytic units (mg protein)-1. The homogeneity of the final product could not be estimated because it was carrier-bound; 5-8 bands originating from the carrier RNA-core were also observed when the final product was analyzed by SDS and native polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The molecular weight proved difficult to determine as the SLS migrated at the dye front. Although the zymogram technique was used successfully to locate SLS by its haemolytic activity on native PAGE, it was not possible to estimate mol.wt.

-117-

In stability and storage studies, SLS was completely stable in 0.1% (w/v) bovine serum albumin supplemented with 20% (v/v) glycerol at -20°C for more than 6 months.

The effect of iron on the growth of *S. pyogenes* group A and *S. milleri* and its influence on SLS production was investigated. Successful growth of 27 strains of *S. pyogenes* Gr A and 3 strains of *S. milleri* was obtained in media containing a 20-fold molar excess of Chelators such as EDDA, transferrin,  $\alpha - \alpha'$  dipyridyl and desferal, over Fe. This suggested that iron was not an absolute requirement for growth of these bacteria. None of the streptococcal strains investigated produced siderophores as assayed by conventional methods. Positive control tests with *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Escherichia coli* MW gave siderophores. Finally, the yield of SLS was not affected by the concentration of iron in the growth medium.

In toxicity studies, SLS inhibited the chemilum inescent response of rabbit peritoneal neutrophils induced by FMLP (N-Formyl-L-Methionyl-L-leucyl-L-phenylalanine). This inhibition was dosedependent. SLS also inhibited the opsonization of zymosan, an effect which might have arisen by two possible mechanisms :-

- (;) by inhibition of a step common to both the classical and the alternate pathway of complement.
- (;;) by serum components acting as carriers of SLS, which was released on exposure to neutrophils.

The posibility that SLS and the streptococcal M-protein may act synergistically or antagonistically was investigated by the chemiluminescence assay. No synergism or antagonism was evident. Further work is required to determine the structure of SLS so that its interactions with carriers, cell membranes and serum proteins can be better understood.

•

Contents	<u>Page</u>
Declaration	
Acknowledgements	: V
Summary	<b>A11</b>
Index of Tables	XA!!!
Index of Figures	X; X
Abbreviations	xx;;
PART I: Introduction	1
1. The Genus Streptococcus	1
1.1. Historical Backgrond	2
1.2. Classification	3
2. Streptococcus pyogenes group A	7
2.1. Microscopy	7
2.2. Group Specific Polysaccharides	8
2.3. Type-Specific M-antigen	10
2.4. Putative Virulence Factors of	13
Streptococcus pyogenes group A	
2.4.1. Erythrogenic Toxins	13
2.4.2. Streptokinase	15
2.4.3. Nuclease	17
2.4.4. Hyaluronidase	17
2.4.5. Serum Opacity Factor	18
2.4.6. NADase	19
2.4.7. Mitogen	19
2.4.8. Streptolysin O (SLO)	19
2.5. Pathogenesis	21

٠

		Page
3.	Streptolysin S	22
	3.1. Definition	22
	3.2. Discovery and Historical Background	23
	3.3. Evidence for Multiple forms of SLS	24
	3.4. Biological Effects of SLS	29
4.	Neutrophils: Activities and Functions	33
	4.1. Classification	33
	4.2. Origin : development and deployment of PMNs	34
	4.3. Chemotaxis and activation of PMNs	35
	4.4. Adherence	36
	4.5. Phagocytosis	38
	4.6. Microbiocidal Activity	42
5.	Iron in Man and Microbes	43
	5.1. Availability of Iron	47
	5.2. Acquisition of Iron	53
	5.3. The role of Iron in the Growth and Production	58
	of SLS in Streptococcus pyogenes group A	
	OBJECT OF RESEARCH	60
	PART II: Materials and Methods	61
6.	Toxin Production	61
	6.1. Strains	61
	6.2. Media	61
	6.3. Cultural Conditions	62
	6.4. Measurement of Bacterial Growth	62

	6.5. Induction of Streptolysin S	62
	6.6. Purification of Streptolysin S	63
	6.7. Assays	66
	6.7.1. Haemolytic Assay	66
	6.7.2. Protein Estimation	67
	6.8. Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis of Protein	67
	6.8.1. Molecular-Weight Estimation	67
	6.8.2. Native Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis of	68
	Protein	
	6.8.3. Immunoblotting	68
	6.9. Blood Agar Overlay (Zymogram)	69
	6.10. Blood Agar Diffusion Assay	69
	6.11. Stability and Storage Study of SLS	70
	6.12. Effect of Chloramphenicol on the Synthesis of SLS	70
7.	Neutrophil Preparation	71
	7.1. Chemiluminesence (CL) Assay	71
	7.1.1. Opsonization Procedures	72
	7.1.2. Effect of SLS on opsonization of Zymosan	73
	7.1.3. Effect of 56°C for 30 min and Mg++EGTA on	73
	the ability of Rabbit Serum to Opsonize Zymosan	
	7.1.4. Agglutination of Rabbit Serum and Zymosan	74
	7.1.5. Ability of SLS to Bind Zymosan	75
	7.1.6. Effect of SLS on Bound Serum Opsonin	75
8.	Effect of Iron on the Growth of Streptococcus pyogenes	76
	group A	
	8.1. Bacteria	77

,

.

8.2. Measurement of Bacterial Growth	77
8.3. Biochemical Assays	77
8.3.1. Estimation of Fe <sup>+</sup> present in culture medium	77
8.3.2. Assay for Detection of Phenolate and	79
Hydroxamate-type siderophores	
8.3.3. The ferric perchlorate test for Hydroxamate	79
-type siderophores	
8.3.4. Csaky test for Hydroxamate-type Siderophores	80
8.3.5. Universal Chemical Assay for Detection and	80
Determination of Siderophores (Blue Plate Assay)	
8.3.6. Thin Layer Chromatography	81
8.3.7. Detection of Phenolate-type Siderophores by	82
Thin Layer Chromatography	
8.3.8. Detection of hydroxamate-type Siderophores by	83
Thin Layer Chromatography	
8.3.9. Detection of Siderophores on Thin Layer	83
Chromatography plates	
8.3.10. Inhibition of Growth by Ethylenediamine-di-O-	83
hydroxyphenyl acetic acid (EDDA)	
8.4. Chemical Defined Medium (CDM)	84
8.4.1. Ion-Exchange Chromatography on Chelex 100 Resin	85
Preparation and Regeneration of Resin	
8.5. Effect of Potassium cyanide (KCN) and Sodium	85
azide (NaN <sub>3</sub> ) on the growth of $Streptococcus$	
pyogenes Gr A	

8.6. Effect of Potassium cyanide (KCN) or Sodium azide 86

	Page
(NaN <sub>3</sub> ) Plus Iron chelator EDDA on the growth of	
Streptococcus pyogenes Gr A	
8.7. Crude membrane Preparation and SDS-PAGE	87
PART III: Results	88
9. Production of Streptolysin S	88
9.1. Induction of Streptolysin S	88
9.2. Streptolysin S Production in Relation to Growth	88
rate	
9.3. Effect of growth medium on SLS levels	89
9.4. Purification of Streptolysin S	93
9.5. Criteria of Purity	93
9.5.1. SDS-Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis	93
9.5.2. Native-Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis	97
9.5.3. Zymogram	97
9.5.4. Agar Diffusion Assay	99
9.6. Western Blotting	99
9.7. Stability and Storage Study	102
9.8. Effect of Chloramphenicol on the synthesis of SLS	102
9.9. Iron and haemolysin (SLS) production in	104
Streptococcus pyogenes	
10. The influence of purified SLS on the chemiluminescence	108
response of rabbit peritoneal neutrophils to FMLP	
10.1. Effect of SLS at Sublethal doses	110
10.2. Effect of SLS on Opsonophagocytosis	114
(washed zymosan)	

	<u>Page</u>
10.3. Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan by	114
rabbit serum (unwashed zymosan)	
10.4. Effect of Heating and Mg++EGTA on Rabbit serum	117
10.5. Effect of SLS on Bound Opsonin	119
10.6. Effect of SLS on responsiveness of PMNs	119
10.7. Effect of SLS on lucigenin amplified CL response	122
10.8. Sensitivity of cells towards SLS	122
10.9 Possible synergism between M-protein and SLS	124
11. Effect of Transferrin on the Growth of Streptococcus	128
pyogenes group A	
11.1 Effect of EDDA on the Growth of Streptococcus	128
pyogenes group A	
11.2. Effect of $\alpha$ - $\alpha$ -dipyridyl on the Growth of	131
Streptococcus pyogenes group A	
11.3. Effect of Desferal on the Growth of Streptococcus	; 131
pyogenes group A	
11.4. Inhibition of Growth by EDDA in the Agar Plate	135
Assay	
11.5. Search for Siderophores under Different Growth	135
Conditions	
11.6. Assay for Phenolate and Hydroxamate-type	138
Siderophores in cultures of Streptococcal	
isolates grown in three different iron-limiting	
media	
11.7. Assay for Phenolate-type Siderophores by Thin	140

Page

	Layer	Chromatography	
	11. 8.	Detection of Hydroxamate-type Siderophores by	140
		Thin Layer Chromatography	
	11.9.	Assay for Siderophores by a Universal Assay	141
		(Blue Agar Plate Assay)	
12.	Effect of Po	otassium cyanide (KCN) and Sodium azide (NaN <sub>3</sub> )	141
		on the Growth of Streptococcus pyogenes Gr A	
	12. 1.	Effect of Potassium cyanide (KCN) or Sodium azide	1 <b>46</b>
		NaN <sub>3</sub> ) Plus Iron chelator EDDA on the growth of	
		Streptococcus pyogenes Gr A	
	12.2.	Membrane Protein profile under Iron-restricted	146
		conditions	
	PART	IV: Discussion	15 <b>4</b>
13.	Production	(induction and release) , purification	152
		and characterization of SLS	
	13.1.	The growth of Streptococcus pyogenes in the	159
		presence of chelators	
	13.2.	Absence of siderophore production	161
	13.3.	Effect of KCN and $NaN_{3}$ on the growth of	162
		Streptococcus pyogenes group A	
	13. 4.	Effect of KCN or $NaN_3$ plus iron chelator EDDA	164
		on the growth of Streptococcus pyogenes group A	
	13.5.	Iron and SLS production in Streptococcus	164
		pyogenes group A	
	13. 6.	The influence of purified SLS on the	165

.

chemiluminescence response of rabbit peritoneal

neutrophils to FMLP

.

	13.7.	Effect of SLS on opsonophagocytosis	166
	13. 8.	Possible synergism between M-protein and SLS	168
	13. 9.	Brief evaluation of the role of SLS in the	169
		pathogenicity of group A streptococci	
14.		PART V: References	174
15.		PART VI: Appendices	205
	15, 1,	Media and Diluents	205
	15.2.	Buffers and gels for SDS-PAGE	207
	15.3.	Buffer and Diluents	210
16.	Permission	to use copyright material	213

# Index of Tables

· · ·

Table	Title	Page
1,	Differential reactions of species of Streptococcus	6
2,	Comparison of biological properties of streptolysins O	31
	and S	
3.	Chemotactic factors for neutrophils	37
4.	Role of iron in microorganisms	46
5.	Bacteria whose virulence in experimental infections is	<b>4</b> 8
	enhanced by iron compounds	
6.	Locations of host iron-binding glycoproteins	52
7.	Effect of 56°C for 30 min and Mg++EGTA on rabbit serum	74
8.	Agglutination of rabbit serum and zymosan	75
9	Effect of SLS on bound serum opsonin	76
10.	Bacterial strains: designation and origin	78
11.	Purification and recovery of SLS	94
12.	Loss of SLS activity under different conditions	105
13.	Effect of cloramphenicol on SLS production	106
14.	Effect of SLS on bound serum opsonin	120
15.	Growth of streptococci in presence of iron-chelators	129
16.	Assay for siderophore production in the presence of iron-	137
	chelators in BHIB, THB, and CD broth	
17.	Detection of siderophores by different assays	13 <b>9</b>
18.	Growth inhibitory concentration of sodium azide and	145
	potassium cyanide for streptococci and other organisms	

•

Flow sl	heet Index of Flow sheets	<u>Page</u>
1.	Induction of streptolysin S	64
2.	Purification of streptolysin S	65
з.	Preparation and regeneration of chelex 100 resin column	86
Figu	re Index of Figures	
1.	$\beta$ -haemolysis of Streptococcus pyogenes gr A	4
2.	Schematic diagram of Group A streptococcus	9
3.	M-protein projections on the cell surface	11
4.	Extracellular macromolecular substances identified in	14
	culture fluids of group A streptococci	
5.	Spread and multiplication of Streptococcus	16
6.	A highly simplified scheme of PMN activation after FMLP	40
	stimulation	
7.	Details of the classical and alternate pathways of	41
	complement activation	
8.	Schematic drawing of steps in phagocytosis	41
9.	Schematic repesentation of two ways by which pathogenic	56
	bacteria obtain iron from iron-binding proteins	
10.	Schematic model of low and high affinity iron assimilation	on 56
	pathways	
11,	SLS production in relation to growth rate (Strain C203S)	90
12.	SLS production in relation to growth rate (Strain 55903M	91
13.	Comparative studies of SLS production in Difco and Oxoid	92
	medium	
14.	Elution profile of SLS from hydroxylapatite column	95
15.	Analysis of crude preparation of SLS by SDS-PAGE	96

• •

Figure	Index of Figures	'age
16.	Analysis of purified preparation of SLS by SDS-PAGE	96
17.	Analysis of crude preparation of SLS by native-PAGE	98
18,	Analysis of purified fractions of SLS by native-PAGE	98
19.	Zymogram (Blood agar overlay)	100
20.	Blood agar diffusion assay for SLS	101
21.	Transfer of SLS on nitrocellulose paper by Western	103
	blotting	
2 <b>2.</b>	Effect of SLS on rabbit peritoneal neutrophils-	111
	FMLP-induced CL response	
23	Effect of SLS at sublethal doses: FMLP-induced CL response	113
24.	Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan (washed zymosan)	115
25.	Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan (unwashed zumosan)	116
26.	Effect of heating and MgEGTA on normal rabbit serum	118
27.	Effect of SLS on responsiveness of PMNs	121
28.	Effect of SLS on lucigenin-amplified CL assay	123
29.	Effect of M-protein on opsonization of zymosan	1 <b>2</b> 6
30.	Growth curve of strain 60343X in presence of transferrin	130
31.	Growth curve of strain 54359V in presence of transferrin	130
32.	Growth curve of strain 55093M in presence of EDDA	132
33.	Growth curve of strain 52942 in presence of EDDA	132
34.	Growth curve of strain 02750 in presence of $\alpha$ , $\alpha$ -dipyridyl	133
3 <b>5.</b>	Growth curve of <i>E. coli</i> MW in presence of $\alpha$ , $\alpha$ -dipyridyl	133
36.	Growth curve of strain 55903M in presence of Desferal	134
37.	Plate assay for inhibition of growth by EDDA	136
38,	Assay for phenolate-type siderophores by TLC	142
39.	Assay for hydroxamate-type siderophores by TLC	143

Figure	Index of figures	Page
40.	Universal assay for siderophores	145
41.	Growth curve of strain 55903M in presence of KCN	147
42.	Growth curve of E. coli MW in presence of KCN	148
43.	Growth curve of strain 55903M in presence of EDDA	149
	plus KCN	
44.	Analysis of Crude membrane preparation on SDS-PAGE	151

r

# **Abbreviations**

A	Absorbance
Bis	N'N'-methylenebisacrylamide
BSA	Bovine serum Albumin
BHIB	Brain Heart Infusion Broth
BHI-BM	Brain Heart Infusion Broth supplemented with 2% sodium
	bicarbonate and 1% maltose
CDM	Chemical Defined Medium
CL	Chemiluminescence
Cm	Chloramphenicol
D	Daltons
EDDA	Ethylenediamine-di-o-hydroxyphenyl acetic acid
et al	et alios (and others)
Fig	Figure
FMLP	N'Formyl-Methionyl-L-Leucine-Phenylalanine
8	gravity
h	hour
HBS	Hepes Buffered saline
HEPES	N-2-hydroxyethyl piperazine Nº-2-ethane sulphonic acid
HU	Haemolytic Unit
IB	Induction Buffer
KCN	Potassium Cyanide
L	Litre
νm	milliVolts
NB	Nutrient Broth
nm	nanometre
PAGE	Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis

.

PBS	Phosphate Buffer Saline
PMNs	Polymorphonuclear Neutrophils
Rf	Relative Mobility
RNA	Ribonuclic acid
rpm	revolutions per minute
SDS	Sodium dodecyl sulphate
SLO	Streptolysin O
SLS	Streptolysin S
TEMED	NNNN'-tetra-methyl-1,2-diamino-ethane
Tf	Transferrin
THB	Todd Hewit Broth
μg	Microgram
μl	Microlitre
v	volts

INTRODUCTION

•

### 1. The genus Streptococcus

Members of the genus Streptococcus have predominantly spherical to ovoid-shaped cells which associate in pairs or chains of varying length. Each cell is approximately 1.0  $\mu$ m in diameter. These bacteria divide in only one plane and have a tendency to remain together and form a chain. The length of the chain depends to some extent on whether the organisms are grown on a solid or a liquid medium and how roughly they are manipulated or handled before microscopy. In general, the longest chains are seen in a wet mount of a liquid culture.

The streptococci are almost always frankly gram-positive. Motile strains are rare. Capsule formation is common in some species. The genus consists of asporogenous, chemoorganotrophic, catalasenegative and oxidase-negative bacteria. For the most part, streptococci are aerotolerant organisms, but a few obligate anaerobes do exist. They are demanding in their growth requirements because they have lost the ability to synthesize many of the nutrients they need. For example, some streptococci require more than 15 amino acids, all of the known B vitamins, some purines and pyrimidines plus asparagine or glutamine for growth. For routine culturing of streptococci, a complex medium containing peptones, meat infusion, salts and glucose is used.

The members of this genus are widely distributed in nature, largely as parasites and pathogens of man and animals and in various dairy products. They make a large contribution to the normal bacterial flora of the human respiratory, alimentary and female genital tracts.

- 1 -

The organisms may be intracellular or extracellular. Their metabolism is fermentative and they metabolise sugars with the production mainly of lactic acid, and do not form gas. The pattern of carbohydrate metabolism more or less resembles that of the homofermentative lactobacilli.

### 1.1. <u>Historical background</u>

The term Streptococcus (combination of two Greek words, Strepto, winding, twisted plus Kokkos, berry) was first applied by the famous surgeon Billroth in 1874 to the chain-forming coccus that he saw in infected wounds. The similar coccus responsible for causing erysipelas was described by Fehleisen in 1883. The term 'Streptococcos' and Streptococcus were subsequently used by various authours to designate a particular kind of cell congregation and were not used in the generic sense. Rosenbach (1884) first applied the name Streptococcus pyogenes to cocci that grew in chains and had been isolated from suppurative lesions in man.

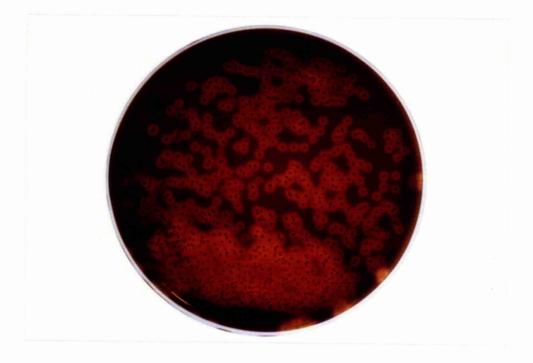
The account by Pasteur, Chamberland, and Roux (1881) of a septicaemic infection of rabbits inoculated with human saliva is probably the earliest reference to the pneumococcus, though no clearly identifiable description of the organism was published before the independent studies of Frankel and Weichselbaum in 1886. Nocard and Mollereau (1887) reported the production of mastitis in the cow and goat by inoculation into the udder of a streptococcus from the milk of a cow with this disease. Schutz (1887) described streptococci isolated from the lesions of equine pneumonia and strangles. The members of this genus exist in nature either as parasites, saprophytes or part of body's normal flora. Being parasites, they cause a variety of diseases in man or his domestic animals. Hence, such strains can more or less be classified and characterized accurately whereas strains which occur as a part of the normal body flora or others which survive saprophytically are still largely unclassified. Thus, precise, acceptable and satisfactory classification is still awaited. Conventionally, in the classification of this genus, three major schemes or general characters have been investigated in the past. These are :

- 3 -

- ;) The appearance of streptococci on blood agar: Not all streptococci are able to grow on blood agar and those that grow do not necessarily cause haemolysis. On the basis of this valuable and differentiating character, one can screen the pathogenic species. To supplement this statement, most streptococci that cause the common septic infections produce true or  $\beta$ - haemolysis on blood agar plates under appropriate conditions (Fig. 1). Other members of the genus produce greenish or  $\alpha$ -haemolysis on blood-containing media, and some produce no change at all.
- ii) To subdivide the streptococci by their ability to cause specific biochemical changes, such as fermentation of particular sugars, is of little value. However, individual tests may be useful to screen and characterize particular strains or species. For example, the ability to grow at extremes of pH, or in the presence of certain inhibitory chemicals, may be used to

- 4 -

Fig. 1



β-haemolysis of *S. pyogenes* group A

differentiate species within this genus.

;;;) In practice, detection and classification by group-specific antigens is of great value for pathogenic species, but is not so useful in grouping non-pathogenic species.

Although there have been many attempts to devise satisfactory schemes for the classification of streptococci, including Sherman's (1937), it is Jones's classification (1978) which is most widely accepted (Bergeys Manual of Systematic Bacteriology, 1986). Jones divided the genus into 7 groups designated pyogenic, pneumococci, oral, faecal, lactic, anaerobic and other streptococci. Although such groupings are admittedly artificial and, in most cases, have no strict taxonomic validity, they provide a convenient framework within which to describe the various organisms. A similar arrangement to that of Jones (1978) has been adopted here, except that *S. pneumoniae* has been included in the pyogenic group (Table 1).

A recent trend in streptococcal taxonomy has been towards the more extensive application of numerical, chemotaxonomic and genetic techniques, with less emphasis on serological criteria for classification. Although serology remains important for identification and typing of some major pathogens, it cannot be used as the main basis for establishing fundamental taxonomic relationships between streptococci. Schleifer and Kilpper-Balz (1987) made a more comprehensive revision of the genus based on the structure of the cell-wall peptidoglyan together with the G+C content of the DNA and the results of DNA pairing. In their classification, over-riding importance is given to the results of the genetic studies by current

- 5 -

Table 1 Differential reactions of species of Streptococcus

Copyright permission for this table and other materials reproduced in this thesis are given on page 213

•

,

Characteriation Chara		Pyo	Pyogenic streptococci	streptc	xocci				Ora	Oral streptococci	tococci				E	Enterococci	cci	с <del>в</del>	strepto- cocci	ЧЧ	serobic	Anaerobic streptococci	cocci		Other	Other streptococci	cocci	
VC       I       d	Characteristics							"roitim .2" .8	"risilim .2" .e	10. S. mutans	11. S. rattus	12. S. cricetus	13. S. sobrinus	14. S. ferus					20. S. raffinolactis	21. S. morbillorum	22. S. hansenii	23. S. pleomosiq .2	24. S. parvulus	25. S. acidominimus	26. S. uberis	sivod .2 .72	28. S. equinus	29. S. thermophilus
$3^{1}C$ $1$	Growth at 10°C		1	+	I   .	,		1	1	1		1	,		+	+	+	+	+	1	1	1	1	11	+	1	1	1
5% NaCl $       +$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $   -$ <	Growth at 45°C	, 1	1		۱	70	70	Ψ	Ρ	٦	P	P	P	I	+	++	+	1	1	Ł	+	+	+	1	ł	ъ	+	+
H 36. $r - r - r - r - r - r - r - r - r - r -$	Growth at 6.5% NaCl	1	י ק			I	I	í	ı	I	I	P	р	ł	+	+	+	I	I	Ł	I	ŁN	I	Ę	1	I	ł	ł
40% bile $\cdot \cdot $	Growth at pH 9.6	ļ	1	1	ו	I	I	I	ı	I	I	i	ł	I		++	+	I	i	L	<b>L</b> N	Ę	ŁN	I	I	ъ.	ł	I
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	Growth with 40% bile	1	-10	۱ ,	ו	Ρ	ъ	I	P	P	φ	p		Į2			+	+	I	Ţ	Ł	Ł	I	Ę	ъ	+	+	1
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	a-Hemolysis	1	1	+	+ •,	P	+	+	I	I	I	I		ł			+	Ρ	ŧ	70	ł	1	ł	ъ	ъ	wk <sup>c</sup>	wk	Ð
is       is <td< td=""><th><b>β-Hémolysis</b></th><td>+</td><td></td><td>+</td><td>•</td><td>I</td><td>ł</td><td>1</td><td>•</td><td>I</td><td>I</td><td>I</td><td>ı</td><td>I</td><td></td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>I</td><td>ł</td><td>i</td><td>1</td><td>I</td><td>r</td><td>ł</td><td>1</td><td>I</td><td>ł</td><td>I</td></td<>	<b>β-Hémolysis</b>	+		+	•	I	ł	1	•	I	I	I	ı	I		1	1	I	ł	i	1	I	r	ł	1	I	ł	I
is       i	Arginine hydrolysis	+	+	Ż	+	I	+	I	Ρ	I	+	I	1	1	+			Ρ	I	ł	I	LN LN	I	I	+	I	ł	7
+ + - + LN p - + p + + + + + p p + + p - p + p + p	Hippurate hydrolysis	т 	+		۱	I	I	I	ı	I	I	I	1	I				70	Ъ	l	I	1	1	+	+	ł	I	I
+ + + +	Esculin hydrolysis	י ס	1	+	ъ	+	-10	1	Ρ	+	+	P	p	+	+	++	+	Ρ	+	I	Ъ	Ę	+	1	+	+	+	I
	Obligate anaerobe	1	1	1	1	1	I	I	٦	٦	٦	7	7	7				1	I	+	+	+	+	I	I	I	I	I

Outer ring of a-hemolysis.
Usually weak reaction.
Strains called S. anginosus may be positive.
Often slow.
Some strains are microserophilic or require added CO.

,

Differential reactions of species of Streptococcus

~

methods, which give only a partial view of the base sequences of the genome, and which are to some extent influenced by the techniques employed (Colman, 1990). For example, differences in the temperature at which DNA reassociation is performed led to the suggestion by Farrow and Collins (1984) that *S. salivarius* and *S. thermophilus* should be reclassified as a single species, but Schleifer and Kilpper-Balz (1987) considered they should continue to form 2 species.

A number of taxonomic and nomenclatural uncertainties remain to be resolved within the genus *streptococcus*. Further work is required to clarify the species designation of some of the streptococci presently described as Lancefield groups C, E, G, L, M, P, U and V. Problems still exist among the oral streptococci , notably those named *S. mitis* and "*S. mitior*" and also with the "*S. milleri*" group (Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology 1986).

### 2. Streptococcus pyogenes group A

### 2.1. Microscopy

The cells are about 0.8 µm in diameter and grow in chains, with the number of cells per chain depending on the environment. In fluid cultures (or purulent exudates), long chains are formed, whereas pus and preparations made from solid cultures tend to contain short chains or pairs (diplococci). Electron microscopic examination of thin sections of streptococci show a profile of gram-positive cells with homogeneous cell wall which may have fimbriae attached, a cytoplasmic membrane, ribosomes, chromatin and occasional cytoplasmic granules. A capsule may also be present. The role of the capsule as a virulence factor and its formation will be discussed later under virulence factors of GrA streptococci.

The basic structural framework of the cell wall is the peptidoglycan layer, similar to that found in other gram-positive bacteria. Associated with the cell surface are the group- and typespecific antigens (Fig. 2)

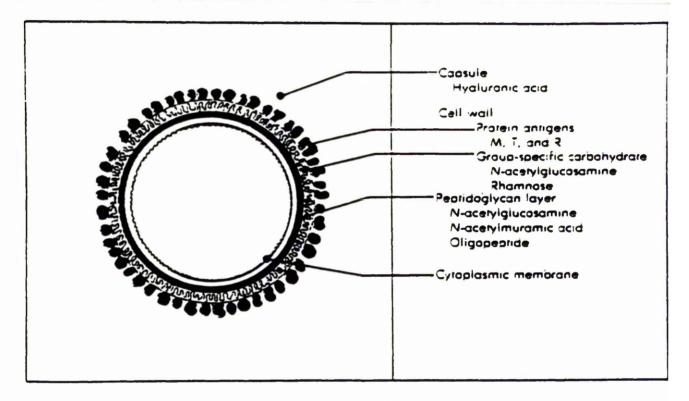
2.2. <u>Group-specific polysaccharide</u>

Serologically specific and distinct polysaccharides have served as the accurate means of classifying beta-haemolytic streptococci from various sources into numerous groups (Lancefield, 1933). These soluble carbohydrate antigens are located in the cell wall and are extracted from the organism by boiling at pH 2, the method used for routine typing of streptococci (Lancefield, 1942).

Group A carbohydrate contains 60% rhamnose and 30% glucosamine, the terminal D-N-acetylglucosamine residues being the antigenic determinants of the molecule (Krause, 1963). Immunity and protection to streptococcal infection are not related to the carbohydrate antigen; however, it was shown that the peptidoglycan-Cpolysaccharide complex of the cell wall caused chronic relapsing lesions in rabbits (Schwab and Cromartie, 1960). When separated, neither the peptidoglycan nor the C-polysaccharide alone produced the chronic relapsing lesion (Krause and McCarty, 1961). Cell wall antigen was localised in the areas of chronic inflammation and the lesion correlated with the persistence of the antigen (Ohanian and Schwab, 1967). The peptidoglycan is considered to be the "toxic" moiety while the C-polysaccharide masks the peptidoglycan, thereby

- 8 --

Fig. 2



Schematic diagram of group A Streptococcus.

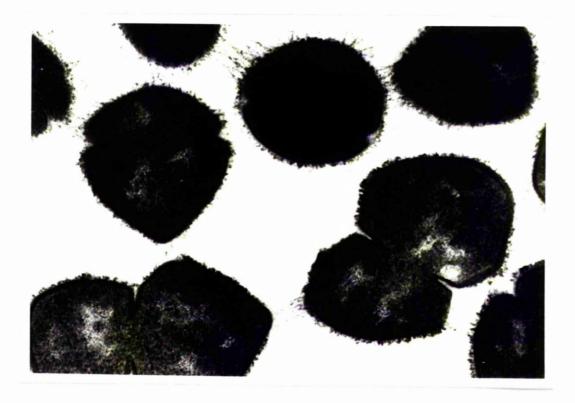
facilitating the persistence of the irritating agent (Schwab and Ohanian, 1966).

2.3. Type specific M-antigen

The M-protein (Lancefield, 1928) belongs/a family of heatstable, trypsin-sensitive protein antigens that form part of the cell surface of group A streptococci. When viewed by transmission electron microscopy they appear as projections which may result from interactions between several adjacent M-protein fibrils forming ' tuftlike structures (Fig. 3) (Fischetti, 1989). Whether these surface structures are composed exclusively of M-protein or result from complex formation between M-proteins and other surface components is still not determined. However, ferritin-labelled anti-M antibodies show that these protrusions contain M-protein (Fischetti, 1989). Mprotein-negative mutants lacked these structures. The M-antigens possess type specificity in that, with very rare exceptions, each strain of streptococcus has a single M-antigen type that is serologically distinct from all other M-antigens. They are to be distinguished from the T antigens and the R antigens, which are also surface proteins but appear not to be of any significance in relation to pathogenicity. The distribution of M,T and R antigens among streptococci follows certain predictable patterns, so that all of them are of use in typing group A streptococci, but the T and R antigens are not restricted to this streptococcal group. Only M- antigens divide the group into a series of distinct clones of strains (Maxted, 1978). Over 70 different M-antigens have been recognized, but this is thought to be far from the total that exist . Even with a comprehensive set of M-typing sera, a considerable proportion

- 10 -

Fig. 3



Electron micrograph of ultrthin sections of group A streptococci exhibiting M-protein fibrils on the cell surface . of strains remain untypable.

For many years the method used to prepare crude M-protein for further purification was based on that developed by Lancefield (1928) for the preparation of extracts for streptococcal typing (Fox, 1974, and Lancefield, 1962). According to this procedure, organisms are suspended in dilute HCl at pH 2.0 and placed in a boiling-water bath for 10 min. After neutralization, the resulting extract is centrifuged and the supernate is used as starting material for the further characterization of the M-antigen.

While the procedure effectively removes M-protein from the cell, it is unlikely that the final purified product represents the native M-protein molecule (Fox and Wittner, 1965). Other procedures for extracting M-protein from whole streptococci or their isolated cell walls include sonic oscillation (Ofek *et al.*, 1969), extraction with alkali (Fox and Wittner, 1969), treatment with group C bacteriophageassociated lysin (Fischetti *et al.*, 1974), and digestion with pepsin at a sub-optimal pH of 5.8 (Manjula *et al.*, 1986) to yield fragments termed Pep M-molecules. Depending on the serotype, the size of the extracted PepM molecule varies from 20,000 to 40,000 in molecular weight (Manjula *et al.*, 1986).

The ability of group A streptococci to persist in infected tissues is primarily due to the cell surface M-protein, a molecule which confers on the streptococcus the ability to resist phagocytosis by polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the absence of type-specific antibodies to the M-molecule (Lancefield, 1959).

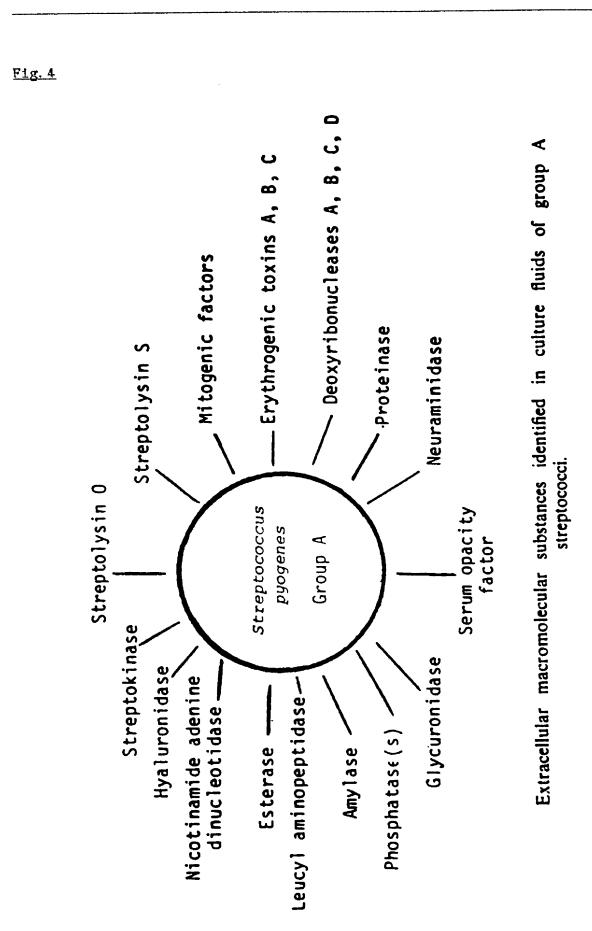
# 2.4. Putative virulence factors of Streptococcus pyogenes gr A

S. pyogenes GrA produces a number of exoproteins that may play a part in streptococcal pathogenesis and are thought to be biologically important. These products represent the adaptation of such organisms to a particular survival strategy. The products, as shown in Fig. 4, may be virulence factors and the evidence linking them with particular aspects of streptococcal infection is still not well understood. Most strains of *S. pyogenes* can produce most of these products under appropriate conditions.

2.4.1. Erythrogenic Toxins (Scarlet fever toxin, Streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxins (SPES, Dick toxin ): These are responsible for eliciting the rash in scarlet fever and have been implicated in a toxic shock-like syndrome (TSLS, Cone, *et al.*, 1987; Wannamaker and Schlievert, 1988; Lee and Schlievert, 1989). Four erythogenic toxins (streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxins) are known and most strains of *5. pyogenes* produce one or more (Colman, 1990). Hooker and Follensby (1934) described the toxins A and B, Watson (1960) type C and McMill an *et al.*, (1987) type D. They are proteins with mol.wt. of 8000, 17000, 13000 and 13000 respectively. The biological properties of the toxins include pyrogenicity, enhancement of lethal shock and myocardial damage due to endotoxin or streptolysin 0, and induction of non-specific T lymphocyte mitogenicity (Lee and Schlievert, 1989). The last effect probably contributes to the development of scarlet fever rash in a susceptible host (Schlievert and Watson, 1979).

S. pyogenes strains carrying one or other of the M-antigens

- 13 -

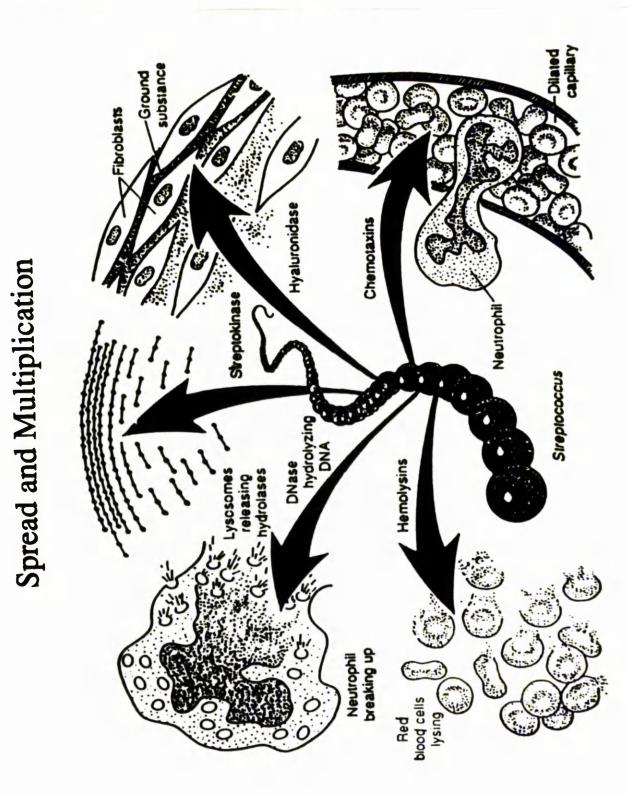


1,3 or 4 are the most numerous isolates from scarlet fever in the UK (Gaworzewska and Colman 1988); members of M-type 22 were prominent among scarlet fever strains from Australia and New Zealand, and had earlier caused an epidemic in East Germany (Parker, 1967). The possibility of involvement of bacteriophage in the production of exotoxin was suggested by Cantacuzene and Bonciu (1926). Zabriskie (1964) converted non-lysogenic, non-toxigenic strains of *S. pyogenes* to the production of type-A toxin with a temperate bacteriophage ; the mechanism of this conversion is unknown (Feretti and Yu, (1987). The gene for the type-A toxin has been cloned ; it shows extensive homology to the staphylococcal enterotoxins B (Johnson *et al.*, 1986) and C (Hynes and Weeks 1987).

2.4.2. <u>Streptokinase</u> (Fibrinolysin): Filtrates of streptococci of the groups A, C, and G cause dissolution of fibrin clots by means of fibrinolysin or streptokinase activity (Tillet and Garner, 1933). This acts on a factor present in normal human plasma (plasminogen) which is converted into a protease (plasmin) which in turn lyses the fibrin (Kaplan, 1944; Christensen, 1945) (Fig. 5). The binding of streptokinase to plasminogen seems to be specific and plasminogen from domestic animals other than cat is not activated. Dillon and Wannamaker (1965) showed that streptokinase remained active after heating at 100°C for 50 minutes and also found that two immun\_ologically distinct streptokinases were produced by group-A strains ; these could be distinguished from that produced by group C strains in spite of general similarity of amino acid composition (Gerlach and Kohler 1979).

- 15 -

Fig. 5



Antibody to Streptokinase appears in man after streptococcal infections, but its measurement is often complicated by the presence of other factors in serum that render the fibrin clot resistant to lysis by inducing a non-specific anti-protease that appears during the acute phase of certain fevers (Kaplan, 1946).

An extracellular protein of mol. wt 46 000 was isolated from group-A streptococci associated with glomerulonephritis but was generally not produced by strains isolated from other clinical states (Villarreal *et al.*, 1979). This protein was identified as streptokinase and was antigenically distinct from that produced by a group-C strain (Job inston and Zebriskie, 1986).

2.4.3 <u>Nuclease</u> : All strains of *S. pyogenes* form at least one deoxyribonuclease (DNAase) and ribonuclease (RNAase) (Tillet *et al.*, 1948). Groups B, C, G and L streptococci also produce DNAase (Deibel, 1963) but usually in smaller amounts. There are at least four antigenic variants designated A, B, C and D (Wannamaker *et al.*, 1967) but DNAase B is the predominant nuclease in *S. pyogenes*. Antibodies to the B enzyme appear in the blood after most infections with group A streptococci (Wannmaker, 1959). The B and D enzymes, but not the A and C have ribonuclease activity.

2.4.4 <u>Hyaluronidase</u> (Spreading Factor): The ability to produce hyaluronidase is present in nearly all group-A streptococci (Benchetrit *et al.*, 1984); antibodies to the enzyme are formed after human infections (Friou and Wanner 1947). It splits hyaluronic acid, an important component of the ground substance of connective tissue (Fig. 5). Many streptococci, including *S. pyogenes* (Meyer *et al.*, 1940)

- 17 -

form hyaluronic acid during the early stage of growth " *in vitro* " and subsequentily form hyaluronidase which destroys it (Pike, 1948). Hyaluronidase production is stimulated by the addition of hyaluronic acid to a growing culture (McClean, 1941). Certain M-types of *S. pyogenes* (e.g. type 4 and 22) in which capsulation is rarely seen, form large amounts of hyaluronidase (Parker, 1983). The formation of hyaluronidase occurs not only in Group A and C, but also in group B, in the large-colony form of group G, in *S. suis* and *S. anginosus*, and the pneumococci.

Hyaluronidase is antigenic, but the enzyme produced by group A strains is immunologically distinct from that of streptococci of group C and G. There is no evidence that it favours invasion of tissues by streptococci (Colman, 1990).

2.4.5. <u>Serum opacity factor</u> (SOF): Many group A streptococci give rise to opacity factor in serum broth (Parker, 1983) or around colonies on serum agar. This is probably attributable to the enzymic release of lipids from serum lipoprotein (Top and Wannamaker, 1968, Johnson and Kaplan, 1988). The opacity factor is closely related to Mproteins. Among the group-A streptococci, all members of some M- types but no members of others form it (Top and Wannamaker, 1968). It is formed also by streptococci of group L. The activity is neutralized by antisera, particularly those prepared in guinea-pigs (Fraser, 1982). The specificity of the reaction almost exactly parallels that of the corresponding M-antigens ; thus opacity-neutralization test are a useful adjunct to M-typing procedures (Maxted *et al.*, 1973). Antibodies to OF persist in human sera for 4-12 years (Johnson and Kaplan, 1988).

- 18 -

Recently, Parkash and Dutta (1991) reported the finding of antibodies to more than one OF type, suggesting repeated streptococcal infection but with different OF types. The opacity factor is extractable with hot acid from M-positive strains but not from M-negative variants of them; it is also present extracellularly in broth cultures. Purification of M-antigen from opacity-forming strains yielded material progressively richer in opacity factor (Hallas and Widdowson, 1983).

2.4.6. <u>NADase</u> (Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotidese): This extracellular enzyme (Carlson *et al.*, 1957) is formed by all members of some M-types of group A streptococci but not by members of other types (Lazarides and Bernheimer 1957, Lutticken *et al.*, 1976). It is also formed by some streptococci of groups C and G (Green, 1979). It is doubtful whether NADase plays any part in pathogenesis, but antibodies to it may be formed in man as a result of infection (Kellner *et al.*, 1958).

2.4.7. <u>Mitogen:</u> Group A streptococci under appropriate conditions produce an extracellular factor that can bring about transformation of lymphocytes into large, blastlike cells capable of division (Taranta, et al., 1968; Ginsburg, 1972). The streptococcal factor (mitogen) acts non-specifically like certain lectins (such as phytohaemagglutinin). In 1969, Taranta, et al., reported that streptococcal mitogen is exclusively produced in group A streptococci and is found in culture supernates, in cell walls, in cell membranes (Keiser, et al., 1971).

2.4.8. <u>Streptolysin O (SLO)</u> : Streptolysin O (oxygen labile) is one of a series of closely related lysins formed by a variety of bacteria that include the human pyogenic streptococci of groups A, C, or G (Streptolysin O), S. pneumoniae (pneumolysin), Clostridium tetani (tetanolysin), Clostridium perfringens ( $\Theta$ -toxin), Bacillus cereus (cereolysin) and Listeria monocytogenes (Listerolysin). All are activated by sulphydryl compounds, are inhibited by cholesterol and related sterols (Howard and Wallace, 1953) and have some antigenic similarities as indicated by precipitin and inhibition tests employing horse antisera to SLO (Cowell and Bernheimer, 1977). The gene for streptolysin O has been cloned into Escherichia coli but no homology could be detected in Southern blot hybridization experiments between the cloned DNA sequences and DNA isolated from other bacterial species producing a comparable haemolysin (Kehoe and Timmis, 1984). The nucleotide sequence of the cloned gene has been determined (Kehoe and Miller 1987). It is predicted to have a mol.wt of 70,000-75,000 and may

There is good evidence that the site of attachment of the lysin to the cell membrane is the cholesterol molecule (Alouf, 1980). Red cells of all readily available animals, except the mouse, are lysed (Howard and Wallace, 1953) as are polymorphonuclear leucocytes and platelets. The reduced lysin is bound rapidly to erythocytes at O°C. The oxidized form does not become attached to cells. Lysis occurs when the temperature is raised but the way in which it occurs is a matter of debate (Alouf, 1980).

be composed of a chain 538 amino acids.

The development of circulating antibodies to streptolysin O after an attack of streptococcal pharyngitis indicates production of the toxin in the host. The consequences of its release are not known. Intravenous injection of potent toxin into mice, rabbits and guinea-

PART I

pigs is followed by death within seconds. Death is from acute toxin action on the heart (Halbert *et al.*, 1961). These authors suggested that the progressive tissue damage that occurs in rheumatic fever could be due to the dissociation, in the circulation or the myocardium, of immune complexes containing streptolysin O.

2.5. Pathogenesis

Streptococci are responsible for a large number of important diseases of man (Parker, 1978) and animals (Wilson and Salt, 1978). Streptococci are important pathogens both because of the many severe infections they produce and because of complications that may occur after recovery from the acute infection.

Man is one of the most susceptible of all animals to streptococcal infections which are among the most common of human bacterial infections. Among the diseases of major importance caused by these organisms are the following :

- Acute sore throat (tonsilitis and pharyngitis) and peritonsilar abscess (quinsy)
- Scarlet fever
- Ear infections (otitis media and mastoiditis)
- Puerperal sepsis
- Meningitis
- Skin infections such as cellulitis, erysipelas (inflammation of the skin and underlying tissues usually of the face and scalp ) and occasionally impetigo (blistering of the skin )
- Necrotizing fasciitis, pyomysitis, spontaneous gangrenous myžitis
- Septicaemia and endocarditis

-21-

Post streptococcal or secondary infections

- Acute glomerulonephystis
- Rheumatic fever
- 3. <u>Streptolysin S</u>;

3.1. Definition: Streptolysin S (SLS) is the non-antigenic (nonimmunogenic), oxygen-insensitive cytolysin which is produced by Group A streptococci. It is largely responsible for a zone of betahaemolysis surrounding colonies on blood agar media (Alouf and Loridan 1986). Streptolysin S is so-called because it is produced in serum and is oxygen-stable in contrast to streptolysin O, the oxygen labile, sterol-dependent cytolysin also produced by streptococci (Wannamaker, 1983). SLS is an unstable polypeptide which associates with various kinds of carrier molecules that act as stabilizers. It is thought to be active only in the carrier state. It has never been produced in a carrier-free state, and always requires the addition of a carrier to the culture or resting cell suspension (Wannamaker, 1983). However, Alouf and Loridan (1986) for the first time reported purification of RNA-core-induced SLS and isolation and haemolytic characteristics of the carrier-free toxin. The carriers (also called inducers) include many apparently unrelated substances such as serum albumin , RNA, ribonuclease-resistant RNA core, Trypan blue,  $\alpha$ -lipoprotein, and some non-ionic detergents such as Tween 40, 60, 80 and Triton X-205 (Wannamaker, 1983). These apparently unrelated molecules to which the haemolytic molety complexes serve to remove the active peptide from the bacterial surface and bind it in an active conformation (Duncan and Mason, 1976). The haemolytic peptide can be transferred from one

INTRODUCTION

PART I

carrier to another, and destruction of either the haemolytic moiety or the carrier molecule inactivates the haemolytic activity of the toxin (Duncan and Mason, 1976, Alouf and Loridan, 1988). The active peptide has been estimated to consist of 32 amino-acids (Alouf and Loridan, 1988) with a high content of glycine and proline (Wannamaker 1983). However, Bernheimer (1967) reported that the most abundant amino acids were glutamic acid (or glutamine) and serine. The polypeptide lacks six amino acids viz histidine, arginine, cysteine, valine, methionine and isoleucine (Wannamaker, 1983).

# 3.2. Discovery and Historical Background of SLS

Marmorek (1895) was the first to discover that filtrates of certain streptococcal culture possess haemolytic activity towards red blood cells of various animal species. Todd (1938) demonstrated that streptococci isolated from human sources produced two distinct haemolysins. He named the oxygen-labile lysin streptolysin O (SLO), to indicate its sensitivity to oxygen, and the oxygen-stable lysin, SLS to indicate its Stability to oxygen and its high stability in serum. Herbert and Todd (1944) and Ginsburg and Harris (1963) found that the oxygen-stable haemolysin could be extracted from washed streptococci with a serum protein fraction. Okamoto (1939) discoverd that yeast nucleic acid induced the formation of a potent SLS-type haemolysin in growing streptococcal culture as well as resting streptococci. Subsequently, Bernheimer and Rodbart (1948) studied the factors affecting the formation of SLS in cultures containing RNA. They found that it was possible to form SLS through the interaction of RNA with resting streptococci by employing the system used by Herbert and Todd

- 23 -

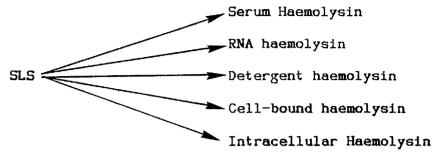
(1944). This haemolysin showed a number of similarities to the serum haemolysin investigated by Humphrey (1949), and Bernheimer (1954). None of the haemolysins were immunogenic, Haemolytic material could be obtained from washed group A streptococci by treatment with ultrasound for long periods (Schwab (1956). This haemolytic material, named intracellular haemolysin (IH) was similar in certain respects to the haemolysin produced in the presence of yeast RNA. Both Ginsburg and Grossowicz (1958) and Taketo and Taketo (1967) subsequently showed that washed streptococci haemolyzed red blood cells, but that no extracellular haemolysin could be demonstrated. Thus, this haemolytic factor was named cell-bound haemolysin (CBH) by Ginsburg and Grossowicz (1958). Ginsburg and Grossowicz (1958) also reported that the cell-bound factor could be released from the streptococcal cells by certain detergents, serum albumin and by lipoproteins (Ginsburg and Harris, 1963) and named it streptolysin D (D stand for detergent). It had many properties similiar to the haemolysins produced by streptococci in the presence of serum or yeast RNA. Ginsburg

(1970) established that the lytic moeity of the RNAstreptolysin or that of the albumin-streptolysin complexes could be transferred to Tween or Triton. They further showed that the haemolytic activity of albumin-streptolysin was transferrable to RNA and vice versa. Their findings led to the unifying concept that RNA, Tween, albumin and other components in lysin complexes functioned as carriers for a haemolytic moiety, which under appropriate conditions, could be transferred from one carrier to another.

3.3. Evidence for multiple forms of SLS : It is now well-

- 24 -

established that SLS can be formed by streptococci in the presence of different inducers , and the properties of the different forms of



oxygen-stable haemolysin are discussed here briefly.

3.3.1. <u>Serum haemolysin</u>: Weld (1934) showed that a potent haemolysin indistinguishable from the serum haemolysin described by Todd (1938) in growing cultures could be obtained by shaking washed streptococci with horse or human serum. He also demonstrated that a single batch of streptococci could be extracted at least 5 times, each extraction yielding approximately the same amount of haemolysin. The extracted haemolysin was thought to be present on streptococcal cells and solubilized by the serum. Synder (1960) studied the effect of sera from various species on the production of SLS by strain C203S. While sera of horses and dogs induced the formation of 300 HU/ml of SLS, sera of humans and monkeys formed 74 and 68 HU/ml, respectively. Sera of rabbit and guinea pigs under similiar condition each formed only 15 HU/ml of SLS.

3.3.2. <u>RNA haemolysin</u> : Okamoto (1939), Okamoto *et al.*, (1941) and Bernheimer and Rodbart (1948) demonstrated that the formation of haemolytic toxin by streptococci was greatly enhanced by addition of yeast ribonucleic acid to the culture medium. The amount of haemolysin was a function of the concentration of RNA, the optimal amount of RNA being approximately 1% (w/v) Hosoya *et al.*, (1949) Bernheimer (1949) further demonstrated that the enhancement of haemolysin formation by yeast RNA could also be obtained by shaking resting streptococci with solutions containing a mixture of nucleic acids. Bernheimer (1954) and Humphrey (1949) both reported that haemolysin produced in this fashion was inhibited by lecithin, trypan blue, congo-red, papain and chymotrypsin, yet was unaffected by trypsin, pepsin, cholesterol, or sera of animals previously injected with preparations of SLS.

Many different sources of RNA have been used to induce lysin production. These include streptococci, mammalian liver (Okamoto, 1962), wheat germ (Bernheimer and Rodbart, 1948), muscle tissues and Ehrlich ascites tumor cells (Okamoto, 1962), Azotobacter vinelandii Tanaka et al., (1958) tobacco leaves (Bernheimer, 1954). Several Bernheimer, 1949; Hosoya et al., (1949) and groups 🛴 . . . Tanaka et al., 1958) showed that following digestion of yeast RNA with pancreatic ribonuclease and precipitation with ethanol, the precipitate markedly increased haemolysin formation by streptococci. Bernheimer and Rodbart (1948) further showed that the active fraction (AF) thus obtained was associated with the ribonuclease-resistant core and had approximately 100 times the activity of the starting material. The AF appeared to be a polynucleotide. Tanaka et al., (1958) hydrolysed yeast RNA with weak alkali at 0°C and separated from the resulting mixture a fraction which precipitated with 25% (v/v) acetone. This fraction, a polynucleotide, was several-fold more active than whole RNA in SLS induction. Further treatment with RNAse increased its potency. Alkaline hydrolysis resulted in cleavage of all internucleotide linkages of RNA with the formation of 2' and 3'

- 26 -

mononucleotides rich in adenine and guanine.

RNA-core haemolysin has a reported molecular weight of 12,000 (Bernheimer, 1967), 18.500 daltons (Calaundra and Oginski,1975) or below 4000 ( Koyama and Egami, 1964). Activity of RNA-SLS complex, according to Ginsburg and Harris (1964), is abolished by an *Aspergillus* ribonuclease. However, Koyama and Egami (1964) and Hryniewicz *et al.*, (1980) demonstrated resistance of SLS to numerous ribonucleases. These findings may be explained by possible masking of the carrier molecule, when attached to the haemolytic molety, thus making SLS not susceptible to the enzymes. An active haemolytic molety without a carrier has been isolated for the first time with reported molecular weight below 4000 on the basis of SDS-PAGE and 20 000 by gel filtration in guanidine. HCL (Alouf and Loridan, 1986).

The production of a haemolysin from Treponema hyodysenteriae and Treponema innocens which is oxygen-stable was increased by an improved culture method and by repeated incubation of these spirochaetes in a buffer containing RNA-core (Saheb *et al.*, 1981, Kent *et al.*, 1988; Kent *et al.*, 1991). Martin *et al.*, (1985) reported that several strains of *Haemophilus pleuropneumoniae* were also capable of producing RNA-dependent haemolysin (s) and reported that RNA or RNA-core (from Torula yeast RNA) were effective "carriers" for *H. pleuropneumoniae* haemolysin just as they were for SLS. However, serum albumin, Tween 80, and, for some unknown reason, RNA-core from bakers'yeast RNA, all of which are functional carriers for SLS (Calandra *et al.*, 1976) and *T. hyodysenteriae* haemolysin (Lemcke and Burrows , 1982) were ineffective as "carriers" for *H. pleuropneumoniae* haemolysin (Martin *et al.*, 1985). Neverthless, like

- 27 -

SLS and the haemolysins produced by T. hyodysenteriae and T. innocens, the H. pleuropneumoniae haemolysin was sensitive to inhibition by trypan blue and sensitive to destruction by pronase. Interestingly, H. pleuropneumoniae haemolysin was sensitive to proteolytic digestion by both trypsin and chymotrypsin, whereas SLS is sensitive only to the latter (Ginsburg, 1970) and T. hyodysenteriae to neither (Saheb et al., 1981); these results may reflect differences in the exposure of specific amino acid residues on the surfaces of these haemolysins (Martin et al., 1985).

3.3.3. Detergent haemolysin : Ginsburg and Harris (1963) showed that a potent haemolytic factor was obtained by incubating washed group A streptococci with Tween 40, 60, or 80, (polyoxyethlene sorbitan monopalmitate, stearate, or oleate, respectively ), Triton X-205 (octylphenol polyethylene oxide), or with trypan blue (Ginsburg and Harris, 1965). Calandra and Cole (1981) y using the detergents Tween 20, 40, 60, and 80, BriJ 56, and Lubrol WX reported that activation of precursor in the membrane was better with a detergent, whereas that in the cytoplasm was better with RNA-core. Therefore, precursor from two different cellular locations can be differentiated by the effects of RNA-core and detergents on precursor titre. Streptococcal strains (e.g., C-203U) incapable of producing RNA or serum haemolysin also failed to produce detergent haemolysin.

3.3.4. <u>Cell-bound haemolysin (CBH)</u> : As demonstrated previously (Smith, 1937), various strains of group A streptococci possess a cellbound haemolysin. The cell-bound haemolysin can be demonstrated by incubation of red blood cells of various animals species with washed

- 28 -

streptococci in the presence of glucose,  $Mg^+$  and sulfhydryl compounds (Ginsburg and Harris , 1965). Under such conditions, haemolysis occurs within a short time although no extracellular haemolysin can be demonstrated in supernatant fluids of the incubation mixture or in extracts of streptococci disrupted by sonic oscillation. Ofek *et al.*, (1970) also reported that there was a direct correlation between the capacity of the streptococcal isolates to haemolyze red blood cells and their cytopathic effects on leucocytes.

3.3.5. Intracellular haemolysin (IH) : Schwab (1956) demonstrated that group A streptococci subjected to sonic oscillation released a haemolytic factor which was designated intracellular haemolysin (IH). The amount of IH released steadily increased with the and time of sonic treatment. 'Calandra and Cole (1976) [Jeljaszewicz *et al.*, (1978) revealed the existence of intracellular haemolysins, of which two seem to function as SLS precursors. One of them, named 'labile active cellular haemolysin, is released from cells by phage-associated lysin (muralysin) and is stabilized by RNA-core, whereas the second, termed 'latent haemolysin, is activated by sonic treatment in the presence of RNA-core.

# 3.4. Biological effects of SLS

SLS is a very potent membrane-damaging agent and lyses a wide variety of living cells and organelles (Alouf and Loridan, 1986) (Table 3). All eukaryotic cells that have been tested, including erythrocytes, lymphocytes (Jeljaszewicz *et al.*, 1978,) polymorphonuclear leucocytes (Bernheimer , 1972), platelets (Bernheimer and Schwartz, 1965), various tissue culture cells and

- 29 -

tumour cells (Okamoto, 1976) are damaged by the toxin (Table 2). Intracellular organelles such as mitochondria and lysosomes are also disrupted by SLS. Its lytic spectrum is somewhat broader than SLO, it is lytic or cytotoxic not only for eukaroytic cells but also for wallless forms of some bacteria notably protoplasts and L-forms from various species (Bernheimer, 1972).

#### In vitro effects

3.4.1. Erythrocytes: The haemolytic activity of SLS is wellestablished. It causes swelling of erythrocytes , followed by haemoglobin escape (Ginsburg, 1970) (Fig.5). Erythrocytes of various animals differ in their susceptibility to SLS (Ginsburg, 1970) which may be attributed to differences in phospholipid content of the cell membrane. The kinetics of SLS-induced haemolysis has been studied by several investigators (Bernheimer, 1944); Duncan and Mason 1976, and Hrynlewicz and Pryjma(1977). SLS is inhibited by several phospholipids, including phosphatidylcholine, phosphatidylethanolamine and phosphatidic acid (Elias et al., 1966). These phospholipids may serve as SLS receptors in the cell membrane. Elias et al., (1966) found that treatment of erythrocytes and their ghosts with phospholipase C, followed by exposure to SLS, resulted in diminished binding of SLS suggesting a role for membrane phospholipids in SLS action. According to Ber/heimer (1972), SLS probably brings about a relatively subtle alteration in the organization of the lipid and /or protein molecules comprising the membrane, an alteration which abolishes selective permeability, thereby permitting free passage of ions. The retained haemoglobin exerts osmotic pressure which draws water into the cell

- 30 -

Effect	Streptolysin O	Streptolysin S
Erythrocyte haemolysis	+	+
by osmotic swelling	ł	÷
"functional hole" formation	+	1
Leucocyte damage	÷	+
Inhibition of phagocytosis	÷	÷
Inhibition of chemotaxis	+	¢.
.ymphocyte cytotoxicity	÷	+
Blastoid transformation of lymphocytes	ł	1
ysis of platelets	÷	÷
Lysis of intact bacteria	I	ţ
ysis of wall deficient bacteria	1	÷
Lysis of mycoplasma	<b>a</b> +	Ŧ
omatic cells in vitro cytotoxicity	÷	Ŧ
Inhibition of virus adsorption	<i>c</i> ·	Ŧ
Damage of mitochondria	÷	÷
Lysosome disruption or labilization	÷	÷
In vivo effects:		
Cardiotoxicity	÷	1
Haemolysis	Ŧ	ć
Dermonecrotoxicity	+	¢
Lethality	÷	1
Antitumour activity	ł	÷
Arthritis induction	ł	4

Comparison of biological properties of streptolysins O and S

<sup>a</sup> Strains containing cholesterol.

•

causing increased cell volume and rupture of the membrane. Thus lysis by SLS involves an osmotic mechanism and is similiar in this respect to several other haemolytic systems. That SLS-induced lysis is a colloid-osmotic process is well documented by the studies of Duncan and Mason (1976) on rabbit erythrocytes and Hryniewicz and Pryjma(1977) on human erythrocytes as shown by the release of <sup>se</sup>Rb prior to the escape of haemoglobin from the cells.

3.4.2. Lymphoid cells Hryniewicz and Pryjma (1977, 1978, 1980) and Hryniewicz *et al.*, 1986) showed that lymphoid cells involved in immune reactions are susceptible to various degrees to SLS. Lymphocytes appeared to be the most sensitive cell type to the cytotoxic action of SLS, as measured by <sup>51</sup>Cr release and the trypan blue exclusion test. This study showed that T lymphocytes (human, mice) were more sensitive than B lymphocytes.

3.4.3. <u>Polymorphonuclear leucocytes</u> : The reported studies on SLS effects on leukocytes have been reviewed by Bernheimer and Schwartz (1960) and Hirsch *et al.*, (1963), Jeljaszewicz *et al.*, (1978), showed that SLS was cytotoxic and caused degranulation of intracellular organelles and changes in the cytoplasm. Ofek *et al.*, (1979) reported that cell-bound haemolysin killed mouse peritoneal macrophages within 30 min whereas RNA-SLS or serum-SLS required 60-180 min for complete killing. Addition of 10% mouse or rabbit serum to RNA-SLS or cell-bound haemolysin delayed its cytotoxic action.

3.4.4.<u>Other cells</u> : In addition to red and white blood cells, many other cell types undergo lysis after exposure to SLS. These include platelets (Bernheimer and Schwartz, 1965), Ehrlich ascites

- 32 -

tumour cells (Ginsburg and Grossowicz, 1960), heart cells of the rabbit and rat, renal cells, McCoy, Hela and KB cells (Ginsburg, 1972).

3.4.5. <u>Subcellular organelles</u> : SLS disrupts membrane-bound organelles such as lysosomes, nuclei, and mitochondria (Weissmann *etal.*, 1963, 1964 ; Keiser *et al.*, 1964).

3.4.6. <u>Antitumour activity</u>: The antitumour activity of SLSforming streptococci has been reviewed by Okamoto (1976, and Okamoto *et al.*, 1978). Such activity was observed on a variety of animal tumours including carcinoma, sarcoma, hepatoma, fibrosarcoma and lymphatic leukemia cells and appears to be due to two different effects, namely a direct cytotoxic effect on tumour cells and a hostmediated antitumour effect which probably involves the immune response and reticuloendothelial system stimulating factor.

#### 4. <u>Neutrophils : Activites and functions</u>

The role of PMNs in health and diseases is well-established. Bacterial pathogenesis is heavily dependent on the capacities of microbial cells to avoid activating or to resist antimicrobial mediators of neutrophil polymorphonuclear granulocytes, the first line of phagocytic defence against infection (Spitznagel, 1983). To understand the encounters between streptococci and neutrophils, it is indispensable to understand the activities and functions of neutrophils.

### 4.1. Classification

White blood cells (WBC) may be divided into two major

- 33 -

populations on the basis of the form of their nuclei : single nuclei (mononuclear or round cells) or segmented nuclei (polymorphonuclear). Mononuclear cells are further divided into large (macrophage or monocytes) and small (lymphocytes) cell types. Lymphocytes may be further subdivided into two major populations, T cells and B cells, on the basis of functions and cell surface phenotype. The large mononuclear cells (macrophages) are phagocytic cells and in peripheral blood are termed monocytes , whereas in tissues they are called histocytes. Polymorphonuclear white blood cells are subdivided into three major populations on the basis of staining properties of their cytoplasmic granules in standard haematologic blood smears or tissue preparations : neutrophil-pink, eosinophil-red, basophil-blue. Polymorphonuclear cells take part in both immune specific and noninflammatory reactions.

### 4.2. Origin, development and deployment of PMNs

PMNs originate from pluripotent stem cells in the bone marrow (Quessenberryand Levitt,1979). Granulocytes begin as myeloblasts, which differentiate by division into myelocytes. Subsequently, during a 7-day postmitotic period, cytoplasmic and nuclear changes occur that result in a fully mature and functional PMN (Sawyer *et al.*, 1989). Two major populations of granules which PMN acquires are the azurophilic and the specific granules. The azurophilic granules (also known as primary granules) contain myeloperoxidases, lysozyme, cationic proteins, and neutral proteases, including elastase. Primary granules are released into the phagosome following phagocytosis and provide the PMN with localized microbicidal activity. The secondary (also called specific) granules are formed during the 7-day maturation period and

- 34 -

contain lactoferrin, lysozyme, vitamin B12-binding protein, cytochrome b, collagenase and certain receptor molecules. The specific granules which discharge much of their contents to the outside of the cell, are thought to provide a regulatory function in the inflammatory response (Weissmann et al., 1980). In 1982, Dewald et al., and in 1987, Petrequin et al., identified tertiary granules in PMNs. These granules contain gelatinase, cytochrome b, and the MAC-1 glycoprotein adherence receptors. The role of these novel granules in PMNs is not fully understood (Petrequin et al., 1987). Circulating PMNs represent only 5% of the total body pool. About one half of the intravascular population of PMNs are not circulating but are adherent to the endothelium of small vessels, a phenomenon called margination. After a half-life in the blood stream of 6-8 hours, PMNs enter the tissues, where they remain functional for 1-2 days (Sawyer et al., 1989). An increase in both total number and percentage of circulating PMNs can be induced by acute infection, endotoxin, and steroids. This increase occurs via increased bone marrow production, accelerated bone marrow release, and demargination (Bishop et al., 1968).

# 4.3. Chemotaxis and activation of PMNs

Neutrophils may be attracted to sites of inflammation by a number of chemotactic factors (Table 3). The significance of these chemotactic factors *in vivo* is less clear. These chemotactic factors include low molecular weight peptides (e.g. FMLP), intermediate molecular weight compounds (C5a fragment of complement) to high molecular weight compounds such as immunoglobulins and lymphokines.

The existence of receptors for some of these factors, such

- 35 -

as the complement component C<sub>a</sub>b and IgG, are well-estabilished (Roos et al., 1981) as are receptors for complement chemotactic factor  $C_{s_{m}}$ (Smith, et al., 1979) and formylated chemotactic peptides (Zigmond, 1978). Acute inflammatory reactions need not be initiated by immune mechanisms and are frequently associated with bacterial infections (such as staphylococcal and streptococcal infections) or traumatic tissue injury. In these situations neutrophils are attracted into sites of inflammation by chemotactic factors released by the infecting organisms (F-Met peptide) or by products of damaged tissue such as fibronectin, fibrin, collagen degradation products, or factors produced by other inflammatory cells (Stewart, 1987). In immune complex reactions, neutrophils are attracted by formation of activated complement components following Ab-Ag reaction in tissues. Upon attraction to sites of inflammation, neutrophils attempt to engulf and digest complexes e.g. consisting of bacteria coated with Ab and complement and other products of damaged tissues (Clark, 1990). The steps between stimulation of receptors and activation of PMNs have been best delineated for the chemoattractant FMLP (Fig .6) (Sawyer, etal., 1989).

## 4.4. <u>Adherence</u>

Adherence to endothelial surfaces by PMNs is an important early step in the response of the cell to inflammatory stimuli (Atherton and Born, 1972). A family of cell-surface glycoproteins have been identified, which enhance adherence of leuokocytes to a variety of targets, especially after the leukocytes have been stimulated (Anderson *et al.*, 1985). The MAC-1 receptor, also termed MO-1 and OKM1,

- 36 -

Table 3Chemotactic Factors for NeutrophilsComplementCsaCsa des-ArgFibrinopeptide BF-Met tripeptidesCollagen peptidesTransfer factor (Lymphokine)Neutrophil chemotactic factors of :FibroblastsMacrophages (Interleukin 1)LymphocytesPlatelet-activating factorLeukotriene B4

is found on PMNs as well as on monocytes, NK cells, and some lymphocytes (Sawyer, *et al.*, 1989). This receptor functions as the receptor for C3bi (CR3) (Dana *et al.*, 1984). The lymphocyte functionassociated antigen-1 (LFA-1) and receptors are found on PMNs as well as on monocytes and lymphocytes. Like the MAC-1 receptor, these receptors consist of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  subunits, a structural form common to all three receptors (Sanchez-Madrid *et al.*, 1983).

Patients with genetic deficiencies of these glycoproteins

have been identified whose clinical course has been marked by delayed umbilical cord separation, impaired pus formation, gingivitis, periodontitis, and recurrent bacterial infections of the skin and soft tissues (Abramson *et al.*, 1981). A variety of adherence-related white cell functions have been shown *in vitro* to be abnormal in these patients, including motility, post-stimulation adherence, spreading, aggregation, chemotaxis, and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). Phagocytosis of particles opsonized by C3bi, post-phagocytic oxidative metabolism, and degranulation are also markedly abnormal. The severity of the clinical syndrome correlates closely with the degree of receptor deficiency; those patients with more severe clinical courses have been shown to have virtually no expression of MAC-1, LFA-1 (Anderson *et al.*, 1985).

#### 4.5. Phagocytosis

PMN ingestion of microbes isolates them from host tissues and permits more efficient killing. Calcium and magnesium ions are required for optimal phagocytosis (Wilksin and bangham1964); anaerobic glycolysis is the energy source. In general, bacteria must be coate/or opsonized for attachment and ingestion to occur. The major opsonins are IgG (the only class of immunoglobin (Fig.7) that promotes phagocytosis in PMNs) and complement. IgG binds to bacteria with the Fab end, allowing interaction between the Fc portion and Fc receptors on the phagocytic cell. Interaction of IgG and Fc receptors opens calcium-dependent channels that may be important in regulation of phagocytosis and post-phagocyt\_ic events (Young *et al.*, 1985). Complement fixation can occur by the classical or alternative pathway,

- 38 -

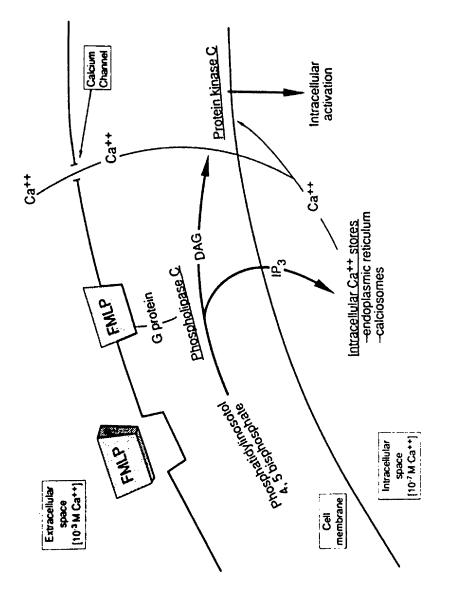
either of which results in production of a C3 esterase essential for cleavage of C3 to C3a and C3b (Fig. 7). C3a is a vasoactive component, C3b is an opsonic fragment. C3b binds to the CR1 receptor and can also undergo hydrolysis to C3bi, which binds to CR3 receptor on PMNs. Lew *et al.*, (1985) have shown that phagocytosis of C3b - and C3bi-coated particles differs from phagocytosis of IgG-coated particles in that the former is calcium-independent. Cell wall components of Grampositive bacteria (Wilkinson *et al.*, 1978) and outer-membrane components of Gram-negative bacteria (LPS) can combine with serum factors to form C3 esterase and to fix C3b to microbial surfaces (Morrison and Kline, 1977). Capsules of bacteria may prevent exposure of these outer-wall or -membrane components to the serum, and in such cases specific antibody to the capsule is required before complement activation can occur (Horwitz and Silverstein, 1980)

Phagocytosis occurs with sequential receptor-ligand binding between the PMN and the microorganism (Fig.8). The motive force of phagocytosis resides in actin , myosin and actin-binding proteins . undergoes gelation and cross-linking of F actin. The mechanisms of phagocytosis are incompletely understood. It has been proposed that the cytoplasm near the site of particle-PMN contact undergoes gelation and cross linking of F actin. This causes puckering of the plasma membrane at the site of contact because of attachment of microfilaments to the membrane. Bulging of the membrane around the particle occurs , and new particle-membrane contacts result. The net result is the formation of pseudopodia and a phagocytic vacuole (Yin and Stosse),1982).

- 39 -

Fig. 6

A highly simplified schema of PMN activation after FMLP stimregulated activation of phospholipase surface receptor leads to G protein-C. Phospholipase C hydrolyzes phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate in acylglycerol (DAG). IP<sub>3</sub> mobilizes calcytosolic calcium, which may also be elevated by influx of calcium from the stimulus of protein kinase C. These processes together lead to activation of the cell membrane to produce two second messenger molecules, inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP<sub>3</sub>) and 1,2-dithereby increasing concentrations of extracellular space. DAG is a direct cium (Ca<sup>++</sup>) from intracellular stores, ulation. Coupling of FMLP to its cell a variety of intracellular processes.



F1g. 7

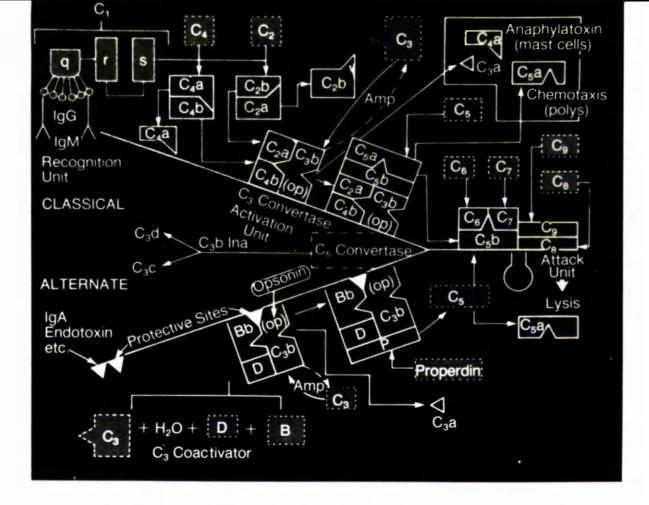
Details of classical and alternate pathways of complement activation .

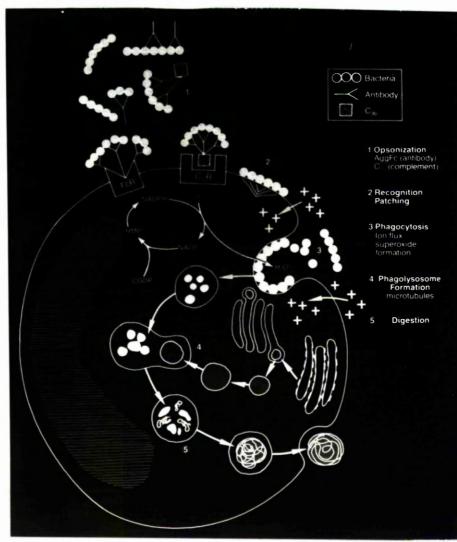
Fig. 8

•

Schematic drawing of steps in phagocytosis.

r





Observations suggest that the concentration of free cytoplasmic Ca<sup>++</sup> is involved in either activation of NADPH oxidase (the enzyme responsible for superoxide production) or degranulation of primary granules into the phagosome (Sawyer *et al.*, 1985) or in both processes.

### 4.6. Microbiocidal activity

There are two main arms of the microbiocidal activity of the PMNs: oxygen-dependent mechanisms and oxygen-independent mechanisms. Oxygen-dependent mechanisms rely on toxic molecules produced as a result of the respiratory burst. Resting PMNs consume only small amounts of oxygen, since most of their energy comes from anaerobic glycolysis. Oxygen-independent mechanisms are responsible for microbial killing in anaerobic environments such as the gastrointestinal tract, gingival crevices, and vaginal mucosa. Oxygenindependent mechanisms utilize lysozyme, lactoferrin, and cationic proteins (Leffelland Spitznagel, 1972)Six small cationic peptides called defensins, with molecular weights between 3,000 and 3,900 daltons, are localized in the azurophilic granules and possess antimicrobial activity against bacteria, fungi, and certain enveloped viruses (Ganz et al, 1985). Another cationic protein with microbicidal activity in PMN azurophilic granules is the bactericidal/permeability-increasing protein (BPI). BPI is membrane-associated, and the intracellular presence of bacteria is required for its bactericidal activity (Weiss et al., 1982).

The respiratory burst consists of a marked increase in oxygen consumption that occurs during and subsequent to ingestion of microbes by PMNs. This increased oxygen consumption results from activation of an NADPH oxidase, which accepts two electrons from NADPH and transfers them to an FAD-flavoprotein associated with cytochrome b245 and from there to oxygen.

NADPH----->FAD-Protein ----->cytochrome b245----->O<sub>2</sub> NADPH oxidase is not expressed in the resting PMNS. Part of the cytochrome b245 is translocated from the cytoplasm (perhaps from the secondary granules) to the plasma membrane following stimulation. In an acidic milieu, superoxide anion is converted to  $H_2O_2$  by superoxide dismutase. Hydrogen peroxide with myeloperoxide (released from primary granules) and a chloride ion produces hypochlorous acid, a potent microbicidal agent. Other halides, such as iodide, can be used in the myeloperoxidase -hydrogen peroxide reaction. Bacterial iodination is closely correlated with bacterial death.

The hexose monophosphate shunt is activated during the respiratory burst and provides reduced pyridine nucleotide and reduced glutathione, which protects the PMN from oxidative damage by removal of excess  $H_2O_2$ .

### 5. Iron in man and microbes

It is well established that iron is an essential constituent (element) of the body necessary for haemoglobin formation and certain chemical processes in living cells. The body of an adult man contains an average 4g of iron, over half of which is contained in haemoglobin in the red cells, the rest being distributed between myoglobin in muscles, cytochromes and iron stores in the form of ferritin and haemosiderin (Conrad and Barton, 1981, Messenger, and Rattledge, 1986),

Microbes, except Lactobacillus plantarum (Archibald, 1983,

- 43 -

etal.,

Verstraete,/1989), *S. faecalis*, *S. avium*, and *S. faecium* (Verstraete, *etal.*, 1989), as for other living tissues, require iron for their cellular functions. This essential micro-nutrient is involved in many biochemical processes in micro-organisms serving as catalysts, or enzymes or engaged in electron transport processes of one sort or an other (Messenger  $\pounds$  1986) as shown in Table 4.

Abnormalities like anaemia and haemochromatosis occur in man in the presence of an unbalanced amount of iron. Similarly, iron deficiency can cause a plethora of effects on microbial structure and function. The concentration of some enzymes (or haeme-proteins), such as cytochromes, peroxidase and catalase are diminished in ironlimatation. *Torulopsis utilis (Torulautitis, Torula yeast or Candida utilis*), grown under iron-limiting conditions, produced cells containing between 45 and 59 nmoles cytochromes per gram dry weight whereas the cytochrome content under iron-replete conditions was 155 nmoles /gm dry weight of cells or still more (Clegg and Garland , 1971).

The activity of membrane-bound enzyme, NADH dehydrogenase, responsible for NADH oxidation in terminal electron transport system of aerobes, is altered in *T. utilis* by iron limited growth (Clegg and Garlan, 1971). Other non-haem iron proteins like succinate dehydrogenase and ferredoxins are also affected by the iron-limitation (Knight and Hardly, 196©).

Aconitase (Dixon and Webb, 1958), aldolase (Kauppinen, 1963, alcohol dehydrogenese (Kauppinen, 1963), enzymes of flavin biosynthesis (Tanner *et al*, 1945), enzymes involved in the biosynthesis of iron transporting compounds (O'Brien *et al.*, 1999), and enzymes of porphyrin and haem synthesis are directly or indirectly affected with an increase in the activity of such enzymes under iron-stress conditions.

Moreover, reports on *Mycobacterium smegmatis* (Winder and O'Hara, 1962), *Clostridium perfringens* (Bard and Gunsalus, 1950), and *Torulopsis utilis* (Davison, *et al.*, 197%), indicate that morphological changes appear in microorganisms grown under iron-limitation. It was also reported that length of *Mycobacterium smegmatis* was increased several fold as compared with cells grown in iron-replete medium. Explanations suggested by Winder and O'Hara, (1962) for this phenomenon were :

- Either inhibition of DNA synthesis without proportional inhibition of cell growth
- Or that iron deficiency had a direct effect on cell division or cell separation .

In summary several effects including changes in growth rate, growth efficiency (mitochondrial functions, cytochromes etc), and growth yields are associated with growth of microorganisms under ironlimiting conditions.

It is generally accepted that iron is essential for microbial growth and it is also clear that microbial multiplication is essential to virulence. That animals injected with iron in various forms were much more susceptible to infection than the untreated controls has already been reported (Table 5). This enhanced susceptibility of iron-treated animals to infection is now wellrecognized and can be seen after challenge with a number of different

- <u>CELL COMPOSITION</u> Iron deficiency can cause : growth inhibition, decrease in RNA and DNA synthesis, inhibition of sporulation, Changes in cell morphology.
- <u>INTERMEDIARY METABOLISM</u> Processes requiring iron : Tricarboxylic cycle (aconitase ), electron transport, oxidative phosphorylation, nitrogen fixation, aromatic biosynthesis, photosynthesis .
- METABOLIC PRODUCTSBiosynthesis of the following products<br/>regulated by iron : porphyrins, toxins,<br/>vitamins, antibiotics, hydroxamates,<br/>cytochromes, pigments, siderophores,<br/>aromatic compounds, DNA and RNA .PROTEIN AND ENZYMESPeroxidase, superoxide dismutase,<br/>nitrogenase, glutamate synthase,<br/>ribonucleotide diphosphate reductase,<br/>aconitase, cytochromes, ferredoxin ,<br/>flavoproteins, ferritin or ferritin-like iron<br/>storage compounds, iron-sulphur proteins .

organism in numerous animals species (Bullen and Griffiths, 1987).

However, it is also apparent that *S. pyogenes* and related organisms appear to be the exceptions to this general rule.

#### 5.1. Availability of iron

Iron is generally biologically unavailable, because in an oxidizing atmosphere, surface iron exists as an insoluble oxyhydroxide polymer (Carrano and Raymond, 1979). Various means of solubilizing iron, and holding it in a utilizable form, have therefore evolved in all organisms. In microorganisms, low molecular weight chelate compounds are employed (Griffiths , 1987) but in higher animals a family of iron-binding proteins, the glycoproteins, fill this role . controlling iron levels and playing a crucial role in iron metabolism. As mentioned earlier, the majority of iron in humans is bound to ironbinding proteins, such as transferrin, lactoferrin, ferritin, haemosiderin, myoglobin and haemoglobin. To be more specific, the total iron concentration in mammalian body fluids is high (20  $\mu$ M), yet almost all of the iron is tightly bound to specialized ironbinding glycoproteins. This limitation in the concentration of free iron in the body fluid creates bacteriostatic conditions for many microorganisms and is an important nonspecific defence mechanism against invading bacteria. This results in a free-iron concentration of 10<sup>-12</sup> to 10<sup>-18</sup>M, far below the bacterial requirement of 50nM to 4-Before discussing how potential pathogens μМ., overcome this lack of available iron, it is necessary to consider briefly the glycoproteins involved in iron-binding .

5.1.1 <u>Transferrin</u>: Transferrin is a monomeric glycoprotein of molecular weight 80,000, with the capacity to bind reversibly two Fe<sup>3+</sup> ions per molecule. Transferrin is responsible for the transport of iron in blood around the body and binds to specific receptors found

- 47 -

Aeromonas hydrophila	Miles, Khimji and Maskell, 1979
Clostridium perfringens	Bullen, Cushnie and Rogers, 1967
Cl. oedematiens	Miles, Khimji and Maskell, 1979
Corynebacterium renale	Henderson, Kadis and Chapman, 1978
Escherichia coli	Bullen, Leigh and Rogers, 1968
Klebsiella pneumoniae	Miles, Khimji and Maskell, 1979
Listeria monocytogenes	Sword, 1966
Neisseria gonorrhoeae	Payne and Finkelstein, 1975
N. meningitidis	Calver, Kenny and Lavergne, 1976
Pasteurella multiocida	Bullen et al., 1968
P. haemolytica	Chengappa, 1983
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Forsberg and Bullen, 1972
Salmonella typhimurium	Kaye, Merselis and Hook, 1965
Staphylococcus aureus	Gladstone and Walton, 1971
Vibrio anguillarum	Crosa, 1980
V. cholerae	Ford and Hayhoe, 1976
V. vulnificus	Wright, Simpson and Oliver, 1981
Yersinia pestis	Jackson and Burrows, 1956
Y. enterocolitica	Robins-Browne and Prpic. 1985

<u>Table 5</u>

~

PART I

~~~

•

on proliferating cells or those involved in haemoglobin synthesis, Its presence and function is of great importance in almost every aspect of iron metabolism as is clear from its specificity for iron and its high stability constant,  $(10^{24} M^{-1})$  as the iron complex (Asien and Brown, 1975). This protein transports iron through the body via the serum and binds to mammalian cells via specific surface receptors (Iacopetta et al., 1982). (Tf+Iron) is transported into and out of cells where it donates its iron without being destroyed (Awai and Bron 1963). By what mechanism the iron is released intracellularly from transferrin is not clearly understood. Konopka et al., (1980) proposed that release of iron from Tf may be mediated primarily by pyrophosphate, although other organic phosphates and even ascorbate also may mediate in this reduction. At this gate-way of metabolism, iron exist as a "labile iron pool" (White et al., 1976) destined for storage in the form of ferritin (Messenger and Rattledge, 1986). It is this iron pool that is subject to chelation therapy; that is, the pool may be depleted of iron by treatment of cells with certain chelating agents. It is important to note here that most microbial siderophores are of a molecular weight of <1,000, and it is possible that they might easily diffuse into the cell and attack the mammalian iron system intracellularly at the point where Tf iron is exchanged . Other possible mechanisms utilised by microbial siderophores are discussed under "Acqusition of Iron by Bacteria" (below). Tf has two binding sites for iron, and these may differ in their ability to accept and donate iron (Marx et al., 1982). It is also interesting to note the dual role of glycoproteins i.e., they serve either to withhold iron from bacteria, or as a source of iron to them. This

- 49 -

- 50 -

largely depends upon the experimental approaches to the same problem. Some organisms are able to compete successfully, and per\_haps, directly with Tf to acquire iron whereas other microbes have alternative mechanisms.

5.1.2. Lactoferrin: The sources of lactoferrin are mammalian milk and other secretions, plasma, and neutrophils (Table 6) (Mason et al., 1969). Unlike transferrin, lactoferrin has a high isoelectric point and does not readily release its iron at low pH. Most previous studies attribute the bacteriostatic effect of milk to its lactoferrin content because the effect is reversible by addition of free iron. Arnold et al., (1977) reported that S. mutans and Vibrio cholerae, but not an enteropathogenic serotype of Escherichia coli, were killed by incubation with purified human apo-lactoferrin (Iron-free lactoferrin) but not by iron-saturated lactoferrin. This antibacterial effect of lactoferrin presumably was due to its ability to chelate and withhold iron, an essential material for these organisms . Unsaturated lactoferrin was shown by Finkelstein et al., (1983) to inhibit growth in numerous bacteria including E. coli, Vibrio cholerae, Salmonella typhimurium, Shigella flexneri, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Staphylococcus aureus, Neisseria meningitidis, Neisseria gonorrhoeae and Neisseria sicca. From these observations, Finkelstein suggested that most of the organisms tested were able to multiply for only a few divisions in the presence of apo-lactoferrin, presumbly utilising endogenous iron stores.

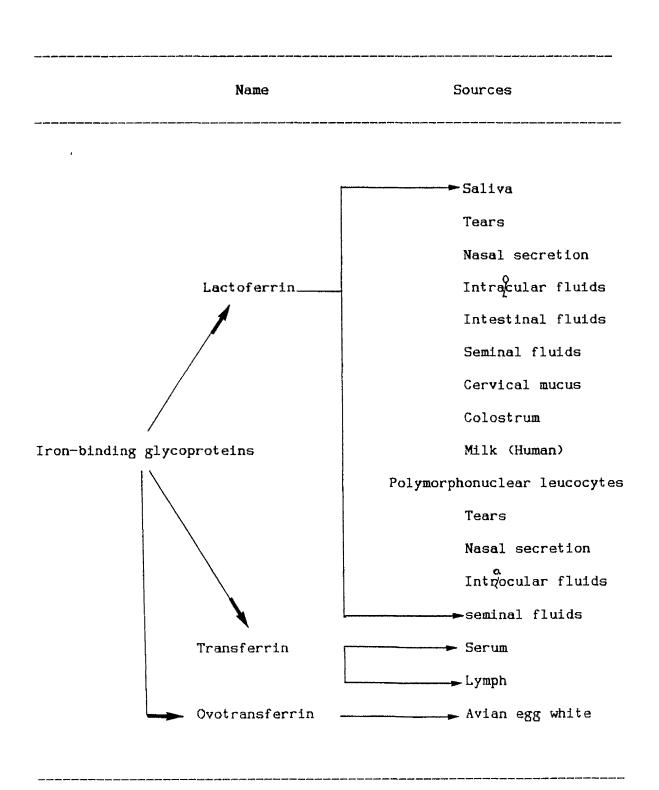
5.1.3. <u>Haemoglobin</u>: One of the basic prerequistes for normal haemoglobin synthesis is a regulated supply of iron into a system

producing haem, i.e., mitochondria. Iron forms part of haem which is coupled to globin synthesis. As the majority of body iron is haemoglobin-associated, haemoglobin is considered to be of relatively little importance to microbes. It is only accessible to bacteria when it is released from the red cell. Haemoglobin consists of four haeme complexes, each linked to a polypeptide chain. Each haeme complex can bind one molecule of oxygen and contains one atom of iron. Although haemoglobin contains 0.34% iron, it does not readily donate this iron to microbes. Although microbes utilize haeme or haemin as an iron source in vitro it does not necessarily follow that they do so in vivo. In serum, breakdown products of haemoglobin rapidly form complexes with other circulating proteins such as haptoglobin . Eaton et al, (1982) demonstrated that haptoglobin prolongs the survival of rats inoculated i.p. with E. coli. But with the production of haemolysins, microbes may promote release of considerable quantities of haem in vivo. Interestingly, the production of haemolysin by Listeria monocytogenes was shown to be inversely related to the iron level in the medium (Cowart et al., 1981).

5.1.4. <u>Ferritin</u>: Ferritin consists of an apoprotein shell (molecular mass 480 KDa) enclosing a core of iron in the form of ferric hydroxy-phosphate, which may contain up to 4500 iron atoms. Ferritin is the main soluble iron-storage protein in mammals and provides the major non-toxic store of iron in the liver, spleen, and other organs which can be mobilized when needed.

5.1.5. <u>Bacterioferrin</u>: It is important to note that ferritin-like molecules have been found in several bacterial species (Harrison,

- 51 -



- 52 -

1979). What advantage is gained by storage of iron by bacteria is not clear. This bacterioferrin, first reported by Stiefel and Watt, was isolated from the nitrogen-fixing bacterium Azotobacter vinelandii. Proteus mirabilis and Mycoplasma capricolum have also been reported to possess similar proteins as has E. coli (Harrison, 1979).

#### 5.2. Acquisition of iron

Pathogens assimilate iron by one of the following methods. 5.2.1. Through proteolytic cleavage: The pathogens degrade glycoproteins, and remove iron from iron-binding proteins. The prominent example in this category is *Bacteroides* species (Carlsson, 1984).

5.2.2. By reduction of  $Fe^{3+}$  complex to  $Fe^{2+}$ : Cowart and Foster (1985) showed that in vitro, Listeria monocytogenes secretes a soluble reductant that effectively removes iron from the Fe3+-transferrin complex. It is not yet clear whether such a reduction process can actually operate in vivo.

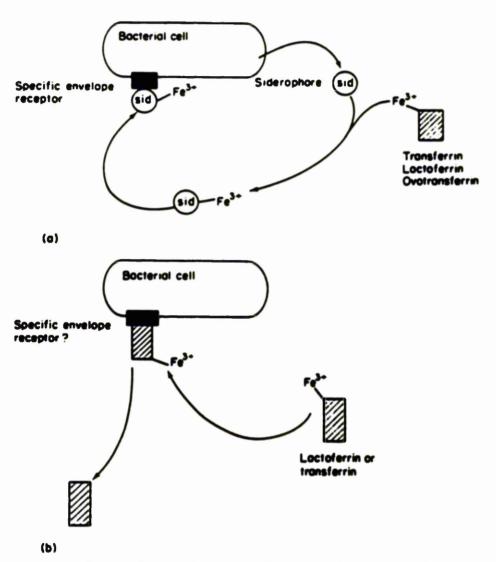
5.2.3. Direct interaction (at celluar level): Until now only Neisseria and Bordetella species are reported to acquire iron by direct interaction with iron-binding proteins although this is not universally accepted. P\_yne and Finkelstein (1978) were the first to report that siderophores are produced by certain strains of gonococci and in 1981 they classified these siderophores as hydroxamates. These siderophores were detected in the culture supernates of both gonococcus and meningococcus. However, several other investigators (Norrod and Willams, 1978; Mickelson and Sparling; 1981, Simonson *et al.*, 1982) failed to confirm the observations, although West and Sparling (1985) reported siderophore production by both *N. gonorrhoeae*, and N. *meningitidis*. Generally it is now accepted that neither the gonococcus nor the meningococcus synthesize siderophores, but they can utilize siderophores provided exogenously. In 1981, Yancy and Finkelstein showed that *N. meningitidis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* could use ferric citrate as an iron source and West and Sparling (1985) showed that aerobactin (hydroxamate-type) siderophore can be used by gonococcus. Isolates of Neisseria were able to use haemin as a sole source of iron and could also remove iron from haemoglobin (Mickelson and Sparling , 1981). Schematic represention of iron-uptake by direct interaction with host iron-binding proteins is shown in the Fig. 9b.

5.2.4. Siderophores as iron transporters: To combat the scarcity of the essential growth element iron, microbes have evolved a very sophisticated iron-uptake mechanism. This involves the production of powerful iron-binding factors known as siderophores (Fig. 9a). Genetically determined, these siderophores are synthesized and exported into the medium where they capture iron and are then internalized through the mediation of specific membrane protein receptors that are also genetically determined and iron responsive (Neilands , 1984) as shown in Fig. 10.

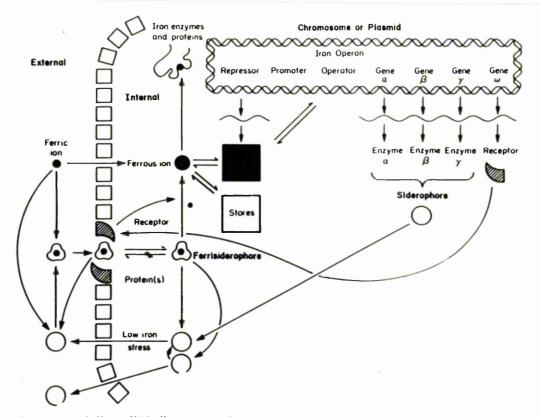
Siderophores belong to two distint classes : the phenolates(or catechols) and the hydroxomates (Lankford, 1973). A given organism may produce siderophores of either one or both classes: (The catecholamides typically bind iron more tightly than do the hydroxamates). Some siderophores may be plasmid-encoded. These low

- 54 -

Fig. 9



Schematic representation of two ways by which pathogenic bacteria obtain iron from iron-binding proteins: (a) siderophore-mediated iron uptake; (b) iron uptake by direct interaction with host iron-binding glycoproteins Fig. 10



Schematic model of low and high affinity iron assimilation pathways in aerobic and facultative anaerobic microorganisms (slightly modified from a scheme presented earlier).

molecular weight chelators are part of what is termed "the high affinity" iron transport system. This pathway, which has been identified in virtually all aerobic , and facultative anaerobic microbes is comprised of two parts:

- Relatively low-molecular-weight (55-1000) ferric ionspecific ligands generally termed siderophores (Greek for"iron bearer") (Neilands, 1984).
- 2) The membrane-bound system for transport and utilization of the chelated iron. "A low affinity" iron transport system is thought to operate when iron is freely available, but little is known about the mechanism involved. This process is relatively insensitive and non-specific and does not require specific carriers. This pathway has played a vital role, however, in the development of knowledge of the high-affinity process. Moreover, the low affinity process enables the cell to survive genetic elimination of all or part of the high-affinity system. The schematic represention of low and high-affinity systems is shown in Fig. 10.

A) Phenolates (Catecholamides) are derivatives of catechol(Odihydroxybenzene). An example is enterobactin (=enterochelin): a cylic trimer of 2,3-dihydroxyl-L-serine produced by various enterobacteria; in *E. coli* it is synthesized by the condensation of 2,3dihydroxybenzoic acid (formed via chorismic acid ) with L-serine-the synthesis involving products of genes ent-entG. In *E. coli* the cell surface receptor for enterobactin is the Fep A protein. *Vibrio anguillarum* forms a novel catechol-type siderophore, anguibactin (Neilands, 1984).

B) Hydroxamates are derivates of hydroxamic acid (R.CO.NHOH ). They

- 57 -

include aerobactin, a siderophore formed by various enterobacteria; genes encoding the aerobactin system i.e., the siderophore (genes iucA-iucD) and its outer membrane receptor protein (gene iutA)- are carried by many CoLV plasmids, although the system may also be chromosomally encoded (Neilands, 1984). Other hydroxamate siderophores include coprogen (produced by many fungi); ferrichrome (formed by species of *Aspergillus, Neurospora* and *Ustilago*); Ferrioxamines and Desferrioxamine (formed by certain bacteria).

Recently Staphyloferrin A, a structurally novel siderophore from staphylococci has been reported by Rapp *et al.*, 1990.

5.3. The role of iron in the growth and production of SLS in

## S. pyogenes Gr A

Haemolysins are virulence factors for many microorganisms (Martinez, et al., 1990). It has been suggested that stimulation of bacterial growth might be due to the increase of available iron produced by the lysis of erythrocytes by haemolysins (Martinez et al., 1990). It has been reported that the combination of *Escherichia* coli with haemoglobin in the peritoneal cavity is lethal (Bornside et al., (1968). In addition toxins and other virulence factors are often made in optimal yields only during bacterial growth in low-iron media. Among such toxins include diphtheria toxin from *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (Russell and Holmes, 1983), Toxin A from *Pseudomonasaeruginosa* (Bjorn *et al.*, 1978), Shiga toxin from *Shigella dysenteriae* (van Heyningen *et al.*, 1953), and tetanus toxin from *Clostridium tetani* (Mueller and Holmer, 1945).

Francis et al., (1985) reported "it seems unclear whether or

- 58 -

not Streptococcus pyogenes Gr A even uses haemoproteins for aerobic respiration. Although haemin has been observed to be necessary for the aerobic existence of streptococci such as S. faecalis and S. sanguis (Whittenbury, 1978), S. pyogenes was reported in one study to lack haemin-induced NADH oxidase activity, thereby suggesting a lack of a cytochrome system (Ritchey and Seeley, 1976). However, that same study indicated S. sanguis to be devoid of NADH oxidation. If the studies of S. sanguis are accurate, it appears that although this bacterial species does not require a cytochrome system for aerobic respiration, it still requires haemin for growth (probably to synthesize a catalase-like protein for protection against  $H_2O_2$  formation". In the interpretation of the ability to remove iron from haemoglobin and the haptoglobin-haemoglobin complex of S. pyogenes gr A. Francis, et al., (1985) suggested that S. pyogenes might secrete a high haem affinity protein such as haemopexin which would be bound by a membrane receptor when carrying haem. The haem could then be transfered into the cell interior.

Griffths and McClain (1987) reported for the first time that streptolysin S produced by *S. pyogenes* was affected by the levels of iron. They showed that streptococcal growth was stimulated by iron and that a low iron concentration (1.2  $\mu$ g/ml) in the medium was conducive to high haemolysin production while an increase of iron up to 5.0  $\mu$ g/ml offered no correlation.

- 59 -

OBJECT OF RESEARCH

# Objects of research

In the last decade considerable advances have been made in knowledge of streptolysin S (SLS), namely

1) In vivo production of SLS (Duncan, 1983)

- 2) Influence of SLS on T lymphocytes subpopulations (Hryniewicz, etal., 1984)
- 3) Insertional inactivation of SLS expression in *Streptococcus* pyogenes (Nida and Cleary, 1983)
- 4) Purification of RNA-core-induced SLS, and isolation and haemolytic characteristics of the carrier-free toxin (Alouf and Loridan 1986)

However, there is much uncertainty about other aspects which are largely unexplored and less developed, for example, the mechanism of production of SLS, and its interaction with cells of the defence system.

The objects of this research were :

(a) To investigate the role of iron on the growth of *Streptococcus* pyogenes group A and its possible role in SLS production.

(b) To purify RNA-core-induced SLS and characterize the carrierfree toxin.

(c) To examine the effect of homogeneous SLS on the chemiluminescent response of rabbit peritoneal neutrophils.

(d) To examine the effect of SLS on the opsonization process.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

ı

.

MATERIALS & METHODS

## 6. Toxin production

#### 6.1. <u>Strains</u>

Two strains of Streptococcus pyogenes GrA were examined for streptolysin S (SLS) production. Strain C203S was obtained from Professor Joseph E. Alouf, Institut Pasteur, Paris, and strain 55903M from the Department of Bacteriology, Royal Infirmary, Glasgow. Strain C203S was selected because it produces a high level of SLS whereas strain 55903M had not been tested for SLS production. The strains were stored lyophilised or as broth cultures supplemented with 20% glycerol at -20°C.

## 6.2. <u>Media</u>

The culture medium (BHI-BM) used for toxin production was that of Alouf and Loridan (1986). Details of the preparation were as follows : 50 ml of Brain heart infusion broth (Oxoid or Difco) was supplemented with 1%(w/v) maltose (BDH) and 2% (w/v) sodium bicarbonate (May and Baker) and was abbreviated as BHI-BM. Stock solutions of sodium bicarbonate (10% w/v) and maltose (10% w/v) were sterilized by membrane filtration (0.45 µm pore size), and stored at 4°C until used. Volumes of BHI-BM sterilized by autoclaving (15 ib/15min) were supplemented with sterile maltose (1% final conc) and sterile sodium bicarbonate (2% final conc) before inoculation . Inocula were grown on agar plates consisting 200 ml of BHI broth (Difco) solidified with 0.7 % w/v technical agar (Oxoid) and sterilised by autoclaving at 121°C. After pouring, solidifying and drying the plates were stored at 4°C until used .

- 61 -

# 6.3. <u>Cultural conditions</u>

BHI agar plates were inoculated from a loopful of thawed glycerinated broth culture and incubated at 37°C for 10 h. Simultaneously, plates of Sheep blood agar (Oxoid Blood Agar Base No. 2, Oxoid Ltd, London, England) plus BHI Blood agar were also inoculated to confirm the presence of  $\beta$ -haemolytic phenotype of the colonies. After incubation, 50 ml of BHI.BM (Oxoid or Difco) was inoculated as a starter culture from the growth harvested from one BHI agar plate. After incubation for 10 h at 37°C without shaking, the starter culture was added to 2 l of BHI-BM in a 2 l Erlenmayer flask which was then incubated at 37°C for 6 to 7 h without shaking.

# 6.4. Measurement of bacterial growth

Growth was estimated by measuring the  $A_{600nm}$  of samples of culture withdrawn at 1 h intervals from 5 to 9 h. When the  $A_{600nm}$ exceeded 0.3 the sample was diluted with BHI-BM to bring the absorbance value to within measuring range. Absorbance values were measured on a Shimadzu recording spectrophotometer (Graphicord-UV 240) using cells with a 1cm light path.

## 6.5. <u>Induction of streptolysin S</u>

The method used was essentially that of Alouf and Loridan (1986) except that centrifugation time was reduced to 10 min. A 50 ml volume of overnight culture grown statically was inoculated into 2.51 (or 20 ml in 1 l or 10 ml in 500 ml) and grown unshaken for 6 to 7h at  $37^{\circ}$ C. The culture was centrifuged at 12000g (Sorval RC-5B) for 20 min at 4°C and the cell pellet was washed in 100 mM potassium phosphate buffer, pH 7.0 before resuspension to a final volume of 40- ml (or 16

- 62 -

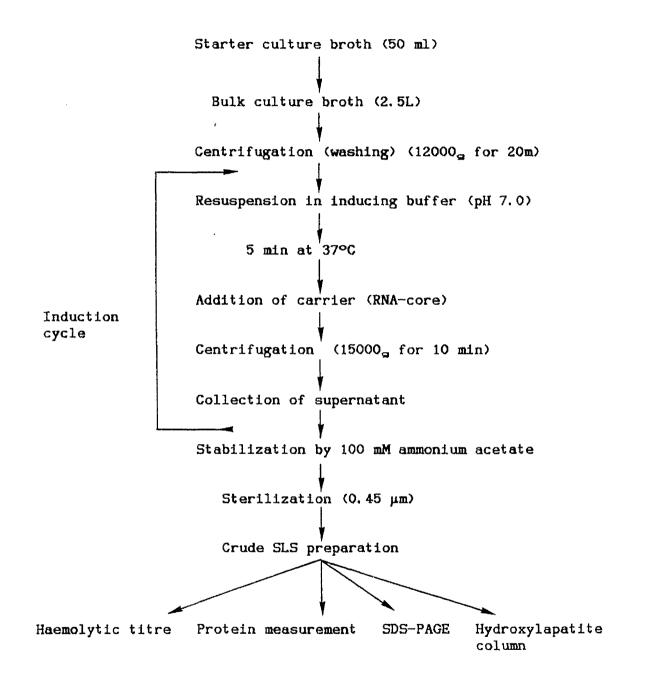
ml in case of 1 1 , 8 ml in case of 500 ml) of induction buffer (IB) (see Appendix 15.3.;) supplemented with 30 mM-maltose. The cell suspension was incubated for 5 min at 37°C and then induced by adding 0.5 mg/ml RNA-core (Sigma) (see Flow sheet 1). After 5 min the cell suspension was centrifuged (Sorval RC-5B) at 15000g for 10 min at 4°C. The supernate (crude SLS) was collected and made 100 mM with ammonium acetate (Sigma) to stabilize SLS (Lai *et al.*, 1978). The pellet was then resuspended in 40 ml (or 16 or 8 ml) of induction buffer supplemented with maltose (15 mM final concentration ) and induced as described above. Ten to 14 inductions could be made on the same pellet. The supernates from inductions were kept at 4°C.

## 6.6. Purification of Streptolysin S

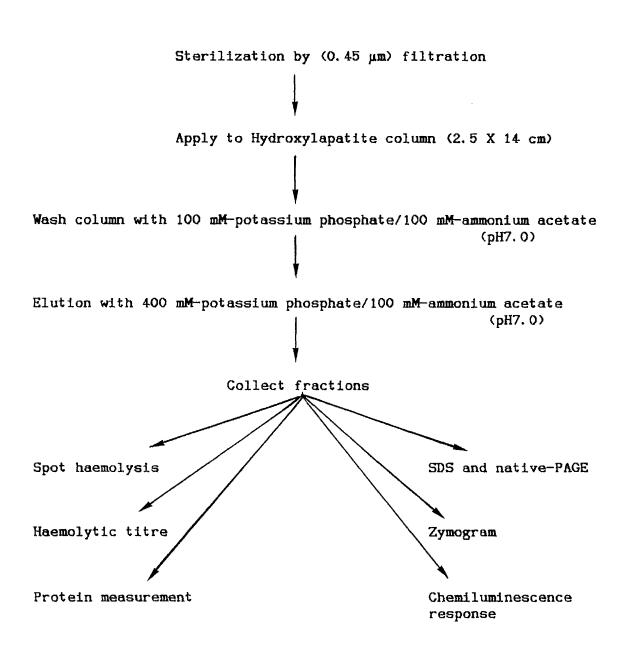
All steps were done at 4°C. Crude SLS preparation ;.e., pooled supernates from 14 induction cycles (see Materials and Methods 6.5) was applied to a column (2.5x14cm) of hydroxylapatite (Bio-gel HTP, from Bio-Rad) equilibrated with 100 mM potassium acetate /100 mM ammonium acetate (pH 7.0). After application of the crude toxin the column was washed with 1 column volume (100 ml) of this buffer and then the toxin was eluted with 400 mM-potassium phosphate/100 mM ammonium acetate buffer (pH 7.0). The flow rate was 30 ml h<sup>-1</sup> and 3.0 ml fractions were collected and analysed by  $A_{280}$  and spot haemolysis. Haemolytic fractions were then further characterized by haemolytic titre , molecular weight estimation on SDS-PAGE and haemolytic activity on native gels (see Flow sheet 2) .

- 63 -

Flow sheet 1 INDUCTION OF STREPTOLYSIN S



Flow sheet 2 <u>PURIFICATION OF STREPTOLYSIN S</u> (All steps 4°C)



6.7. Assays

6.7.1. <u>Haemolytic assay</u>

Haemolytic activity was determined using serial two-fold or ten-fold dilutions of SLS in 150 mM sodium phosphate buffer (pH 6.8) in tubes or in microtitre trays (Sterlin). Defibrinated sheep blood (Becton Dickinson) was centrifuged at 5000g for 5 min and the sedimented erythocytes washed three times in 150 mM sodium phosphate buffer (pH 6.8). Sheep red blood cells (SRBC) were suspended (about 2% v/v in 150 mM sodium phosphate buffer) such that a 30 fold dilution of this suspension in distilled water gave an A<sub>541</sub> of 0.16. This standard SRBC suspension (about 4.8x10<sup>7</sup> cells / ml) was kept at 4<sup>o</sup>C and used within 4 days. For the tube assay, 0.9 ml diluent (150 mM PBS) was placed in tubes and 0.1 ml of original sample toxin (crude or purified) was added to the first tube (10<sup>-</sup>) and was mixed gently. Diluted toxin (0.1 ml) was transferred to tube No 2 ( $10^{-2}$ ) and mixed well and in this way a sample was transferred to tubes 3  $(10^{-3})$  and 4 (10-4). To all these tubes 0.5 ml of 2% SRBC was added. The tubes were incubated at 37°C for 45 min and then briefly centrifuged at 5000g (Biofuge A, Heraeus Sepatech or Mistral 6L) for 5 min. The percentage of released haemoglobin was estimated by the  $A_{541}$  of the supernatant fluid. One haemolytic unit (HU) was defined as the amount of test material which caused release of 50% of the haemoglobin. Values were estimated graphically. Controls were done by mixing the test material with cholesterol (10  $\mu$ g / ml) which inhibits the haemolytic activity of SLO and not that of SLS (Hewit and Todd 1944), or with trypan blue (13 µg / ml) which inhibits SLS (Ito, 1940). The RNA-core alone, and mixtures with 30% maltose plus 100 mM ammonium acetate did not exhibit

- 66 -

- 67 -

any haemolysis up to 10mg ml<sup>-1</sup>.

6.7.2. Protein estimation

Protein estimation was carried out by the method of Bradford (1976) using bovine serum albumin (Sigma) as standard. Protein concentration was also estimated by  $A_{2\Theta Orim}$  (Shimadzu recording spectrophotometer). The protein concentration in the eluant from the hydroxylapatite column was monitored by measuring  $A_{279nm}$  using an LKB UVICORD 1 linked to an automatic LKB fraction collector and LKB chart recorder.

#### 6.8. Polyacrylalmide gel electrophoresis of protein

#### 6.8.1. Molecular weight estimation

SDS-PAGE was performed according to the method of Laemmli, (1970). 15% resolving gels were used throughout this study. Stacking gels contained 4.5% (w/v) acrylamide. Samples were solubilised in an equal vol of sample buffer (see Appendix 15.2.v;) in a water bath at 100°C for 90 seconds. The same procedure was applied to the molecular weight standards (SDS-7 Kit), obtained from Sigma. Loading volume of samples was adjusted according to the capacity of respective gel i.e., 50ul for 1.5 mm thick gel and 25-30 ul for 0.8mm thick gel. Samples were electrophoresed into the stacking gel at 20 mA and at 25 mA in the separating gel for 0.8 mm thick gels. For 1.5 mm thick gel, the current for the stacking gel was increased to 30 mA and for the separating gel to 45 mA. Gels were run until the tracking dye reached the bottom of the gel, after which gels were fixed and stained either by Coomassie blue or by the silver staining method. This silver staining method was adapted and modified from the procedures of Oakley et al., (1980).

Whenever analytical SDS-PAGE was used, a mixture of polypeptides of known molecular weight (SDS-7, Sigma), was included in the gel. This contained the following seven proteins :

α-lactalbumin (14.2 kDa)

Trypsin Inhibitor (20.1 kDa)

Trypsinogen (24 kDa)

Carbonic anhydrase (29 kDa)

Glyceraldehyde-3-Phosphate Dehydrogenase (36 kDa)

Egg Albumin (45 kDa)

Bovine Albumin (66 kDa)

#### 6.8.2. Native polyacrylamide gel

The procedure described in (6.8.1) was modified for native polyacrylamide gel as follows. The two denaturants, 2-mercaptoethanol and SDS were omitted from the sample, resolving, stacking and running buffers. Samples were not heated and gels were run at 4°C. These gels were used for zymogram assay and for transferring SLS to nitrocellulose for blotting experiments.

6.8.3. Immunoblotting / Western blotting

Immunoblotting was performed according to the method of Towbin and Gordan (1984) in a Bio-rad "Transblot" transfer apparatus. A sandwich of nitrocellulose paper (Schleicher and Schuell) or Hyband-C (Amersham) and gel was prepared between two sheets of Whatman paper (3mm), with one Scotch bright pad on each side. This sandwich was loaded into a sandwich assembly and placed in a tank of transfer buffer (see Appendix 15.3. v) with the nitrocellulose facing the PART II

anode. Protein was transferred by applying 30V across the sandwich for 18h followed by 50V for 1hr in order to transfer the higher molecular weight proteins. After completion of the run , the nitrocellulose membrane was fixed and stained with 0.5% w/vPonceau S in 0.1% acetic acid for 5 min and then de-stained with water for 10 min. Transferred protein bands were then recorded.

6.9. Blood agar overlay (zymogram)

The zymogram technique was used to locate haemolytic activity of SLS on native gels. After electrophoresis, the gel was washed briefly with 150 mM sodium phosphate buffer (pH 6.8). Defibrinated sheep blood (Becton Dickinson) agar consisting of 2% thrice washed erythrocytes and purified agar (1%) in 150 mM sodium phosphate buffer (pH 6.8) was prepared, cooled to 40°C and poured onto the gel to a thickness of 1 mm. The electrophoresis gel plus the blood agar overlay was supported by a glass plate, and was left undisturbed for five min in order to solidify. A second glass plate was placed onto the blood agar overlay with maximum care to avoid trapping air bubbles between the sandwich. The sandwich was kept at 37°C in a humid atmosphere and inspected for haemolysis each hour for 8 h.

6.10. <u>Blood agar diffusion assay</u>

Washed SRBCs were added to blood agar base (Oxoid) to give a concentration of 7% v/v blood agar. After pouring the blood agar ( $45^{\circ}$ C), into the plastic tray, wells were cut 1.5 cm apart in the solid gel with a sterile cork borer (3 mm). Samples were diluted by 10-fold serial dilution in 150 mm sodium phosphate buffer (pH 6.8).

- 69 -

After addition of samples to the wells, the tray was incubated at 37°C for 12 h (see Fig. 20).

6.11. Stability and storage study of SLS

After every step of the purification procedure, the stability and storage properties of SLS wave determined. For this purpose small aliquots of purified SLS were stored at room temperature, 4°C, -20°C, and -70°C or in a freez-dried state and with or without different stabilizing agents. These agents included glycerol (10%, 20% and 40%) or addition of an extraneous protein such as bovine serum albumin (BSA, Sigma) in different concentrations (0.1% 0.5% and 1%). A mixture consisting of 10% glycerol plus either 0.1% 0.5% or 1% BSA was used to stabilize the SLS. In this way 20% and 40% of glycerol were tested with BSA.

# 6.12 Effect of chloramphenicol on the synthesis of SLS

SLS released by successive inductions with carriers could originate from either (a) presynthesized SLS associated with cell surface layers or in the cytoplasm or (b) *de novo* synthesized SLS during the period of each induction. In order to test which of these mechanisms was operating the following experiment was done. C203S was grown in BHIB-BM and after 6h growth, the culture was divided into two aliquotes of 250 ml each and centrifuged and washed (see Materials and Methods 6.5). These two preparations of washed cells were called "cells A" and "cells B" and after each being suspended in 8 ml induction buffer, both were induced with RNA-core for SLS release. The presence of SLS was determined by haemolytic asssay using trypan blue and cholestrol as controls (Materials and Methods 6.5). The "cells A" were suspended in induction buffer containing 200 µg chloramphenicol / ml and "cells B" were induced with induction buffer alone. After induction and centrifugation, supernates were collected and analysed for haemolytic activity .

# 7. <u>Neutrophil preparation</u>

Glycogen-induced rabbit peritoneal neutrophils were obtained from female New Zealand white albino rabbits. Normal sterile saline (500 ml) containing 0.1% (w/v) oyster glycogen (Sigma) was injected intraperitoneally via a large bore, blunt ended 18 gauge needle and the peritoneal exudate recovered by aspiration 4h later (Lackie, 1977). The exudate was stored at 4°C and used within 2 days of isolation. PMNs were recovered from the fluid by centrifugation at 200 x g for 10 min and washed once in divalent-cation-free HBS-EDTA (see Appendix 15.3. (ii) then in HBS (see Appendix 15.3. (ii). Contaminating erythrocytes were removed from the resulting neutrophil pellet by hypotonic lysis (5 ml distilled water for 5 sec). Washed cells were used within 2 h of preparation. The chemiluminescence response was measured on a monodisperse population of cells obtained by passing the cells through a 10 µm Nitex filter (Plastok Associates, Birkenhead). This technique produced PMN suspension of >95% purity and viability as determined by the Trypan blue exclusion test (Hryniewiczand Pryjma 1977). Cell numbers were standarized after counting in a haemocytometer.

## 7.1. Chemiluminesence Assay (CL assay)

The CL-assay was performed using an automated luminometer (Wallac LKB 1251 luminometer) connected to an Acorn BBC 'B micro computer. Chemiluminesence em ission was measured in millivolts (mV) at 37°C. The number of neutrophils per assay tube was  $10^6$  and the final volume of sample per tube was 500 µl. Luminol (Sigma) was added (after adding PMNs+buffer) by a micro-pipette to a final concentration of  $10^{-5}$  M. Luminol was first prepared as a  $10^{-2}$  M solution in dimethyl sulphoxide, diluted 100 fold in HBS, then stored at  $-20^{\circ}$ C until use. The stimulus used was either the soluble synthetic peptide FMLP (Sigma) or suspensions of zymosan (1mg / ml). The final concentration of FMLP per assay tube was  $10^{-7}$  M. The zymosan was suspended in sterile normal saline (1mg / ml) and boiled for 2h. After centrifugation at 2500xg for 15 min, the zymosan was washed three time in cold sterile saline, resuspended in normal saline at a final concentration of 1mg /1 ml and stored at  $-70^{\circ}$ C ( Fine , et al., 1972). Zymosan suspension (100 µl) was used in the opsono-phagocytosis assay. If the FMLP was used as the stimulus then it was added just before putting sample tubes in the luminometer. Before addition of a stimulus, the neutrophils were always pre-warmed for 30 min at 37°C.

# 7.1.1. <u>Opsonization procedures</u>

Whole rabbit blood was allowed to clot at 4°C for 8h, then centrifuged at 4°C and the serum was stored at -70°C in aliquots of 0.5 ml. Just before use, the opsonin was thawed and kept at 0°C. For complete complement inactivation, serum was heated at 56°C for 30 min (Matthay *et al.*, 1981). For inactivation of the classical pathway (CP) only, serum was chelated with MgEGTA (see Appendix 15.3. v) for 10 min at ambient temperature (Prez *et al.*, 1975, Mathay *et al.*, 1981) in a tightly capped sterile Eppendorf tube and was kept at 37°C for 30 min. Zymosan (100 µl) was added to each tube except unopsonized control and the tubes were tumbled at 10 rpm at 37°C for 30 min. After opsonization, the micro tubes were centrifuged at 5000 rpm for 5 min and resultant zymosan was washed twice with PBS (see Appendix 15.3.).

- 72 -

The supernates were always assayed for haemolytic activity and washed zymosan was used for the CL response.

#### 7.1.2. Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan

Fresh rabbit serum (100  $\mu$ l of neat , 1/2 , 1/4 and 1/8 dilutions) and 100 µl of a ten-fold dilution of purified SLS were mixed in Eppendorf microfuge tubes in duplicate and were incubated at 37°C for 30 min. Zymosan (100 ul) was added, and the tubes were again incubated for 30 min at 37°C. The Eppendorf tubes were divided into two sets ;.e., set A and set B. After 30 min the tubes of set A were centrifuged at 5000 rpm for 5 min and the tube contents were washed twice with PBS (pH 7.4). The supernates from opsonized tubes were tested for haemolytic activity. The washed zymosan was used in the chemilumanesence assay. The tubes of set B were centrifuged and the pellet was directly used in the CL response assay after resuspending in HBSS. Immediately after the sequential addition of 500  $\mu$ l of neuotrophils (prewarmed at 37°C), buffer and luminol, chemiluminesence was measured at 5 sec intervals for the first 10 min and at 5 min intervals for remaining 50 min. Zymosan plus serum, both washed and unwashed, were treated as opsonized controls and zymosan plus PBS was treated as the unopsonized control.

# 7.1.3. Effect of 56°C for 30 min and Mg++EGTA on the ability of rabbit serum to opsonize zymosan

For complete complement inactivation, fresh rabbit serum was inactivated by heating at  $56^{\circ}$ C for 30 min. Mg++EGTA buffer (see Appendix 15.3.v) was used to inactivate the classical pathway only. The sequential scheme of tubes and mixtures is given in Table 7. Each

- 73 -

100  $\mu$ l of rabbit serum (whole, heated or +Mg++EGTA chelated) and PBS was mixed and incubated for 30 min at 37°C. Zymosan (100  $\mu$ l) was then added and again the mixture was incubated for 30 min at 37°C. After 30 min the tubes were centrifuged at 5000 rpm, the zymosan was washed twice in PBS and the pellet was used in the chemilumenesence assay. Prewarmed neutrophils at 37°C were used in the assay. Buffer and Luminol, kept at room temperature, were also used.

Table 7 EFFECT OF 56°C FOR 30 MIN AND Mg++EGTA ON RABBIT SERUM

| Tube no | Zymosan | Rabbit serum | Heated rabbit serum | Mg++EGTA | PBS    |
|---------|---------|--------------|---------------------|----------|--------|
| 1       | 100 µl  | 100 µl(1/2)  |                     |          | 100 µl |
| 2       | -do-    | -            | 100 µl(1/2)         |          | 100 µl |
| 3       | -do-    | 100 µl(1/2)  | _                   | 100 µl   | -      |
| 4       | -do-    | -            | -                   |          | 200 µl |

#### 7.1.4. Agglutination of rabbit serum and zymosan

In order to determine whether rabbit serum agglutinated zymosan (particulate), the following procedure was developed. For 100  $\mu$ l each of buffer, serum or zymosan, the following additions were made in wells 1-5 of a microtitre tray and gently mixed as shown in Table 8. The tray was incubated at 37°C with the lid on for 2 h after which the contents of each well was examined for agglutination

- 74 -

of zymosan by light microscopy. This process was repeated after a further period of 16 h incubation at 37°C.

| Well No | Buffer | Serum | Zymosan |
|---------|--------|-------|---------|
| 1       | +      | +     | -       |
| 2       | +      | +     | +       |
| 3       | +      | -     | +       |
| 4       | +      |       |         |
| 5       | -      | +     | +       |
|         |        |       |         |

# Table 8 AGGLUTINATION OF RABBIT SERUM AND ZYMOSAN

# 7.1.5. Ability of SLS to bind zymosan

This assay was used to follow SLS haemolytic activity after incubation with zymosan at 37°C for 30 min. Ten fold dilutions of SLS (100 µl) were mixed with 100 µl of zymosan in Eppendorf microcentrifuge tubes and incubated at 37°C for 30 min. Zymosan (100 µl) and 100 µl of PBS (pH 7.0) were mixed, incubated and served as a negative control. After 30 min, tubes were centrifuged at 5000 x g for 5 min and the supernates removed and tested for haemolytic activity to detect free SLS. The zymosan was resuspended and opsonized as described (Materials and Methods) under the caption opsonization procedure (7.1.1).

# 7.1.6. Effect of SLS on bound serum opsonin

Zymosan (100  $\mu$ l) was opsonized with a 1 in 2 dilution of

- 75 -

fresh rabbit serum for 30 min at 37°C in micro-centrifuge tubes. Neat and dilutions (1/2, 1/5, 1/10) of SLS were mixed with both opsonized and non-opsonized zymosan and incubated for 30 min at 37°C.

Table 9 EFFECT OF SLS ON BOUND SERUM OPSONIN

| TUBE NO | SERUM | ZYMOSAN+ | SLS- | PMNs* | BUFFER | LUMONOL |
|---------|-------|----------|------|-------|--------|---------|
| 1       | 1/2   | 0. 1     |      | 0.5   | 0.2    | 0.1     |
| 2       | 1/2   |          |      | 0.5   | 0.3    | 0.1     |
| 3       | 1/2   | 0.1      | Neat | 0.5   | 0.1    | 0.1     |
| 4       | 1/2   | 0.1      | 1/2  | 0.5   | 0.1    | 0.1     |
| 5       | 1/2   | 0. 1     |      | 0.5   | 0.1    | 0.1     |
| 6       | 1/2   | 0. 1     | 1/10 | 0.5   | 0.1    | 0.1     |
| 7       |       | 0.1      | Neat | 0.5   | 0.2    | 0.1     |
| 8       |       | 0. 1     |      | 0.5   | 0. 3   | 0.1     |

Volumes in µl

- § Serum was diluted 1/2 and 100  $\mu l$  was used in each tube
- + For each tube 100 µl of zymosan was used
- SLS was diluted 1/2 , 1/5 and 1/10 and each tube contained 100  $\mu l$  of each dilutions
- \* Each tube contained 500 µl of PMNs

The tube contents were washed twice with sterile PBS at 5000 rpm for 3 min and the washed zymosan was then used in the CL response assay (Table 9 ).

## 8. Effect of iron on growth of Streptococcus pyogenes Group A

All glassware was immersed in 1M HCl for 24 h and rinsed thoroughly six times in deionized water before being sterilized by dry heat at 160°C for 2h before use . All solutions were made with - 77 -

glass distilled and deionized water .

8.1. Bacteria

The strains used are given in Table 10. Before use bacterial strains were cultured in either Brain Heart Infusion Broth (BHIB, from Oxoid), Chemical Defined Medium (CDM, Rijn and Kessler1980, see Appendix 15.1.B) or Todd Hewit Broth (THB, from Gibco) for 12 h at 37°C. After 12h of incubation, bacteria were harvested by centrifugation at 5000 rpm, washed twice with sterile saline before being used as inoculum.

# 8.2. Measurement of bacterial growth

The organisms were grown in either 50 mls BHIB, THB or chemical defined medium with or without the following chelating agents:  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl, (2-2-Bipyridine, Sigma), Transferrin (Sigma), Desferal (Ciba-Geigy, Horsham), or ethylenediamine-di-O-hydroxyphenyl acetic acid (EDDA) (Sigma). The effect of the respiratory inhibitors potassium cyanide (KCN) and sodium azide (NaN<sub>3</sub>) on the growth of strains of Gr A streptoccoci was determined. Growth was estimated by measuring A<sub>soonm</sub> of samples withdrawn at 1h or 2h intervals ; when A<sub>soonm</sub> exceeded 2, the culture was diluted with the appropriate sterile medium until the absorbance value was brought into the range of 1. Absorption values were measured on an SP6-550UV/VIS spectrophotometer (Pye Unicam). The appropriate uninoculated medium served as a blank and the growth curves were plotted graphically.

8.3. <u>Biochemical assays</u>

# 8.3.1. Estimation of Fe<sup>3+</sup> present in culture medium

Growth in 50 ml of either THB, BHIB, NB (Nutrient Broth, Oxoid) and CDM was monitored in these media in the presence and Table 10

Bacterial Strains - Designation and origin

| HOSPITAL NO:           | ORGANI SM  | SITE | SOURCE: |  |
|------------------------|------------|------|---------|--|
| S. pyogenes            | GrA        |      |         |  |
| 1) 54359V              | 48         |      | GRI     |  |
| 2) 55903M              | *          |      | 76      |  |
| 3) 60343X              |            |      | -       |  |
| 4) 88/00657            | 18         |      | RH      |  |
| 5) 88/00657            | **         |      | -       |  |
| 6) 52114               | <b>H</b> ( |      | CL      |  |
| 7) 45713/87            |            |      | 77      |  |
| 8) 52011               | 16         | TS   | -       |  |
| 9) 45543/87            |            |      | **      |  |
| 10) 47061              | **         | SS   |         |  |
| 11) 48749              | **         | ES   | -       |  |
| 12) 48137              | M          | S    | -       |  |
| 13) 05790              | 71         |      | 74      |  |
| 14) 11324              | 14         | WS   |         |  |
| 15) 13151              | 15         | TS   | -       |  |
| 16) 09242              |            | DS   | **      |  |
| 17) 12757              | 11         | SV   |         |  |
| 18) 12997              | N          | TS   |         |  |
| 19) 10132              | 7          | H    | **      |  |
| 20) 05790              | H          | Р    | 19      |  |
| 21) 52986              | 10         | NI   | *       |  |
| 22) 53141              | 10         | PSW  |         |  |
| 23) 52942              | **         | OM   | *       |  |
| 24) 01537              | +          | +6   | RH      |  |
| 25) 01594              | *          | NK   |         |  |
| 26) 02750              | 10         | NK   |         |  |
| 27) 02750              | -          | NK   | **      |  |
| Strep.milleri          |            |      |         |  |
| <u>2</u> 8) 505        |            | NK   | NK      |  |
| 29) 586                |            | NK   | NK      |  |
| 30) 591                |            | NK   | NK      |  |
| 31) <i>E. col</i> i MW |            | NK   | NK      |  |
| 32) Staph.aureus       |            | NK   | NK      |  |

TS Throat swab SS Swab from scalp ER Ear swab S swab WS wound swab DS Discharge from sore P Pus NI Nail infection OM Otitis media PSW Pus from Skin wound SV Swab from vulva NK Not known

GRI : Department of Bacteriology, Royal Infirmary, Glasglow.

RH : Department Laboratory Medicine , Ruchill Hospital, Glasgow

CL : Bacteriology South Lannarkshire Laboratory , Law Hospital, Carluke absence of chelating agents (namely EDDA,  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl, Desferal or human apo-Transferrin). The Fe content (nmol/ ml) of THB, BHIB, NB, and CDM was 627, 32.22, 59.08 and 0.089 respectively, as measured by the Iron Binding Capacity Kit (Sigma). Stock aqueous solutions of chelating agents were sterilized by membrane filtration (0.4  $\mu$ m pore size Millipore). After determination of the concentration of Fe in each of the media, each chelating agent was added to each medium at concentrations of equimolar, or 5, 10, and 20 fold molar excess of Fe. The broths were stored at 4°C for 24 h in order to allow further binding of Fe in the medium.

#### 8.3.2. Assays for detection of Phenolate- and Hydroxamate-type

#### <u>siderophore</u>s

The Arnow colorimetric assay (1937) was used to detect phenolate-type siderophores in spent medium. To 1 ml of bacterial culture supernate or lyophilized culture supernate resuspended to 1/10 of the original volume, the following were added sequentially. 1 ml 0.5N hydrochloric acid, 1 ml nitrite molybdate reagent (10g sodium nitrite and 10g sodium molybdate in 100 ml distilled water), 1 ml 1N sodium hydroxide and 1 ml distilled water. After each addition, the samples were mixed thoroughly. Any positive red colour was measured at  $A_{515rm}$ . The minimum amount which can be detected with this assay is 5nmol of diphenol (Barnum, 1977). 3,4 dihydroxy benzoic acid (Sigma) was used as a positive control and fresh culture medium as a blank.

#### 8.3.3. The ferric perchlorate test for Hydroxamate-type

#### <u>siderophore</u>

Hydroxamate siderophores were detected by the addition of 1ml ferric perchlorate (2.5 mg/ ml) and 1 ml perchloric acid (0.14g/- ml) to 1 ml culture supernate or lyophilized culture supernate resuspended to 1/10 of the original volume. A red/brown colour was indicative of a positive hydroxamate reaction (Atkinand Neilands1966). Desferal was used as a positive hydroxamate standard and fresh culture medium as a negative control.

#### 8.3.4. Csaky Test for Hydroxamate-type siderophore

This was a modification of the original Csaky test (Csaky, 1948). To 0.5 ml bacterial culture supernate, 0.5 ml 6 M sulphuric acid was added and the sample was hydrolysed in a sealed tube by autoclaving at 122°C for 18 h. Sodium acetate (35%w/v) was added to the hydrolysed sample to adjust the pH to 5.5. After the sequential addition of 1 ml sulphanilic acid (1% w/v in 30% acetic acid) and 0.5 ml iodine (1.3% w/v in 30% acetic acid, the solution was mixed and allowed to stand for 5 min at room temperature. To decolorize the solution, 0.5 ml sodium thiosulphate (2.5% w/v) was added. After mixing the solution, 0.5 ml 3N HCl and 1 ml of  $\alpha$ -napthylamine (0.3%) w/v in 30% acetic acid, Sigma) was added and the volume adjusted to 10 ml with distilled water. The pink colour, indicative of a positive reaction, was allowed to develop for 30 min at room temperature. Desferal was used as a positive hydroxamate standard and fresh uninoculated culture medium as a negative control. With all samples, the assay was carried out with and without the hydrolysis step as described earlier.

#### 8.3.5. <u>Universal chemical assay for the detection and</u> <u>determination of siderophores (Blue plate assay )</u>

The method described by Schwyn and Neilands (1987) was employed to detect siderophores by using their high affinity for iron

- 80 -

(III). The method is based on the formation of the ternary complex, chrome azurol/ S/ iron (III) / hexadecyltrimethylammonium bromide with an extinction coefficient of approximately 100,000 M<sup>-1</sup> cm<sup>-1</sup> at 630nm which serves as an indicator. When a strong chelator removes the iron from the dye, its colour turns from blue to orange. To prepare 1 litre of blue agar, 60.5 mg CAS (chrome azurol S) was dissolved in 50 ml water and mixed with 10 ml iron (III) solution (1 mM FeCl<sub>a</sub>, 6H<sub>2</sub>O, 10 mM HCl). With stirring, this solution was slowly added to 72,9 mg HDTMA (hexadecyltrimethylammonium bromide, Sigma) dissolved in 40 ml water. The resultant dark blue liquid was autoclaved. Chemically defined medium (see Appendix 15.1.B) was simultaneously autoclaved. After cooling the CDM solution to 50°C, filter sterilized solution of casamino acids and other required supplement-like vitamins (see Appendix 15.1.B) were added. The dye solution was finally added to a sterile solution of CDM along the glasswall, with enough agitation to achieve mixing without generation of foam in the medium after cooling to 50°C. Each plate received 30 ml of blue agar. With a bacteriological loop, a heavy point inoculation of each of the test strains was made. The inoculated plates were incubated at 37°C for 24 h before inspection of the plates for growth and colour changes around the colonies. An orange 'halo' was indicative of siderophore production.

#### 8.3.6. Thin layer chromatography

#### Preparation of samples for analysis:

The following methods for the preparation of samples of both hydroxamate-and phenolate -type siderophores were adapted from those of Andrus *et al.*, (1983) and Rogers (1973).

- 81 -

Cultures were grown in iron-limiting media (BHIB containing either EDDA, apotransferrin, or  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl) for 18 h and 24 h at 37°C on an orbital shaker operating at 200 rpm. For phenolate-type siderophores, lyophilised culture supernates of 18 h and 24 h cultures were resuspended to 1/10 the original volume in sterile distilled water and phenolates were extracted with ethyl acetate by the following procedure. To 5 ml of redissolved lyophilised supernate, 5 ml 0.5 M HCl was added to adjust the pH to 1.5. Ethyl acetate (5 ml) was then added and the resulting emulsion was shaken and allowed to stand for 2h. The aqueous layer and ethyl acetate layer were separated by centrifugation at 3000 x g for 20 min at room temperature and the ethyl acetate layer recovered and evaporated to dryness under a stream of nitrogen before redissolving in 0.5 ml ethanol.

For hydroxamate-type siderophores, lyophilized supernate of cultures grown in iron-limiting media (BHIB containing either EDDA, Transferrin, or  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl) for 18h and 24h at 37°C shaken at 200rpm, was resuspended to 1/10 the original volume in sterile distilled water.

Spots (10  $\mu$ l) of each concentrate were applied to an activated (100°C for 15 min) silica gel plate (20x20cm coated with 0.25mm of silica gel, Camlab) with a micropipette and dried with a hair dryer.

# 8.3.7. Detection of phenolate-type siderophores by thin layer chromatography

Samples in ethanol were spotted onto activated TLC plates and ascending chromatography was carried out at room temperature for

- 82 -

2h with 5% (w/v) ammonium formate, 0.5% (v/v) formic acid as solvent.

## 8.3.8. <u>Detection of Hydroxamate-type siderophores by thin layer</u> <u>chromatography</u>

The method was adapted from that of Gibson and Magrath (1969). Samples (10  $\mu$ l) were spotted onto activated TLC plates and ascending chromatography was carried out at room temperature with N-butanol-acetic acid-water (60:25:15 v/v) as solvent. The plates were air-dried and examined as described in (i) of this section.

#### 8.3.9. Detection of siderophores on TLC plates

The dried plates were sprayed with 1% FeCl<sub>3</sub> in order to detect iron-binding compounds. For the specific detection of phenolates, 3,4-dihydroxybenzoic acid (sigma) was used as a positive standard for mobility ( $R_r$ ). Desferal was used as a mobility ( $R_r$ , standard for hydroxamate-type siderophore.

To compare the spots which appeared on the stained plates, their  $R_\tau$  value was calculated as follows :

Distance travelled by the iron binding Compounds (cm)

R<sub>r</sub>= -----

Distance travelled by the solvent front (cm)

8.3.10 Inhibition of growth by EDDA

The method used was essentially that of Marcelis *et al.*, (1978) except that the medium was changed to nutrient agar. Nutrient agar (15 ml) was poured into plastic petridishes (6.8 cm diameter), resulting in an agar layer of 5 mm thickness. Wells of (3 mm) were cut out of the agar and the plates were then flooded with 3 ml of a  $10^{-2}$ dilution of an 18h culture of bacteria in nutrient broth. After

- 83 -

removal of the excess fluid, especially from the cups, the surface of the agar plates contained approximate  $10^{-2}$  bacteria, sufficient to produce confluent growth. After drying the plates (1h at 45°C), 5 µl of solutions containing EDDA (1.5, 4.4, 15, and 44 mM) were pipetted into the wells. Zones of growth inhibition in the lawn were observed after 10 to 18 h at 37°C.

#### 8.4. Chemical defined medium

The chemically defined medium (CDM) used was essentially that of Rijin and Kessler (1980) except that the mixture of individual amino acids was replaced by casamino acids (Difco) at appropriate concentration (see Appendix 15.1.B). The CDM (final concentration mg/l) was as follows : FeSO<sub>4</sub>. 7H<sub>2</sub>O, 5.0; K<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>, 200; KH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, 1000; MgSO<sub>4</sub>. 7H<sub>2</sub>O, 700; MnSO<sub>4</sub>, 5.0;

<u>Amino acids</u>. 20% casamino acids (Difco) together with tryptophan (200mg/l) final concentration.

Vitamins. The following vitamins (Sigma) were used (final concentration, mg/l): p-aminobenzoic acid, 0. 2; biotin, 0. 2; folic acid, 0. 8; nicotinamide, 1. 0;  $\beta$ -nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, 2. 5; pantothenate calcium salt, 2. 0; pyridoxal, 1. 0; pyridoxamine dihydrochloride, 1. 0; pyridoxamine dichloride, 1. 0; riboflavin, 2. 0; thiamine hydrochloride, 1. 0; and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> 0. 1. . <u>Other chemicals</u> . Glucose, 10g/l; adenine. 20 mg/l; guaninehydrochloride, 20 mg/l; uracil, 20 mg/l; CaCl<sub>2</sub>. 6H<sub>2</sub>O, 10 mg/l; NaC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. 3H<sub>2</sub>O, 4. 5g/l; L-cystein, 500 mg/l; NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, 2. 5g/l; NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>. H<sub>2</sub>O, 3. 195g/l; Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub> 7. 350g/l . Each constituent was treated in Chelex 100 resin , except MgSO<sub>4</sub>, FeSO<sub>4</sub>,

MnSO<sub>4</sub>, CaCl<sub>2</sub> and vitamins. The final pH was adjusted to 7.4. Iron

- 84 -

MATERIALS AND METHODS

levels present in CDM after Chelex-100 treatment were determined by the Sigma Iron Binding Capacity Kit.

8.4.1. Ion-exchange chromatography on Chelex 100 resin

Preparation and regeneration of resin

The sequence used to condition and regenerate the column (2.5X14cm) was as follows : Passage of 2 bed volume 1 M HCl followed by 5 bed volumes of double distilled water; then 2 bed volumes 1 M NaOH followed by 5 bed volumes of double distilled water. Finally sodium phosphate buffer (0.66 M, pH 7.4) was passed through the column until the pH of the eluate was 7.4. and the column was finally rinsed with 5 bed volumes of double glass distilled water before it was used to deionise culture medium (Kadurugamuwa *et al.*, 1987) (see flow sheet 3). Removal of cations was carried out by passing media through a column of resin (Chelex-100; Bio-rad) in the sodium form with a flow rate of 2 ml /min.

8.5. Effect of Potassium cyanide (KCN) and Sodium azide (NaN<sub>3</sub>) on the growth of Streptococcus pyogenes Gr A

A number of streptococcal isolates, S. milleri, E. coli MW, and S. aureus were tested for the effect on growth of KCN and NaN<sub>3</sub>. Generally, KCN, a respiratory inhibitor, binds to and inhibits both the oxidized and reduced forms of cytochrome oxidase of the  $a_3$ -type (Smith, 1954). Azide (N<sub>3</sub>-) acts as a respiratory inhibitor by combining with, and preventing the reduction of oxidized cytochrome oxidases of the  $a_3$ -type. The final concentrations of these respiratory inhibitors in BHIB were 1 mM, 10 mM, 50 mM, and 100 mM Flow sheet 3

Preparation and regeneration of Chelex 100 resin column

Passage through two bed volumes 1 M HCl Rinse with five bed volumes distilled water Passage through two bed volumes 1 M NaOH Rinse with five bed volumes double distilled water Pass sodium phosphate buffer (0.66 M) until pH of eluate is 7.4

Rinse with five bed volumes of double distilled water

and they were added after 2h of initial growth at  $37^{\circ}$ C in shaken , unshaken or unshaken anerobic cultures . Growth curves were determined by measuring  $A_{soorm}$  on a SP6-550UV/VIS spectrophotometer at intervals of 30 min for 6 h .

8.6. Effect of KCN or NaN<sub>3</sub> plus iron chelator EDDA on the growth of <u>Streptococcus pyogenes</u>

S. pyogenes was grown under iron-restricted conditions either

- 86 -

pattern was determined by measuring  $\Lambda_{\text{soorm}}$  ( SP6-550UV/VIS

spectrophotometer) at 30 min intervals for 6 h.

#### 8.7. Crude membrane preparation and SDS-PAGE

Bacteria grown under iron-limited conditions were harvested . by centrifugation at 5,000 g for 10 min at 4°C and washed with 0.1 M tris buffer. The bacterial pellet was resuspended in 20 ml distilled water and broken by five cycles of (each cycle consisted of 1 min of ultrasound followed by 30s cooling in an ice bath) 60s pulses of sonication 10 times in an ice bath, with a 30s interval for cooling. Unbroken cells were removed by centrifugation at 5,000 x g for 10 min The supernate obtained was then centrifuged at 38,000 x g for 45 min. The resultant wall membrane pellets were washed twice with distilled water and added to sample buffer. After boiling for 2 min, the preparation was subjected to sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS)polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) using the system described by Laemmli (1970) with 12.5% acrylamide separating gels. RESULTS

•

(

.

- 88 -

#### 9. Production of SLS

#### 9.1. Inductions of SLS

Production of SLS by strain C203S was examined. SLS was obtained by induction of a 1 litre culture in BHIB (Difco) grown statically with RNA-core. RNA-core has been used previously as an inducer and a carrier molecule for SLS (Ginsburg, 1970, Duncan *et al.*, 1981, Alouf and Loridan, 1986). Fourteen consecutive inductions were carried out on the same pellet of bacteria, which was repeatedly resuspended in 16 ml induction buffer and induced each time with RNAcore. The combined haemolytic material (about 220 ml) contained 220000 haemolytic units (HU) and this served as the crude preparation for further purification.

#### 9.2. SLS production in relation to growth rate

The relationship between optimum production of SLS and growth phase was studied in two strains (C203S and 55903M) of *S. pyogenes* Gr A in static conical flask cultures (500 ml of BHI-BM, Difco) grown at 37°C. The inoculum was 10 ml of overnight broth culture (see Materials and Methods 6.5). Aliquots of 100 ml of culture were withdrawn at 1h intervals during the growth period and centrifuged to yield a cell pellet. Each pellet was induced 5 times (each induction was of 8 ml) and the induction fluid was assayed for haemolytic activity. The results showed that:

(;) the amount of SLS released in both strains was maximal in cells taken between early and late exponential growth phase (Figs. 11 and 12).

(;;) the yield of SLS was 1000 HU/ ml and was maximal after 6 h growth

in strain C2O3S (Fig. 11) whereas strain 55903M (Fig. 12) gave a maximal titre was 316 HU/ ml after 6 h of growth

- (;;;) although the A<sub>soo</sub> of both strains continued to increase even after 9 h incubation when the last samples were taken, the yield of SLS declined as estimated by haemolytic assay.
  - 9.3. Effect of growth medium on SLS levels

In a number of other studies on cytolytic toxin production, the growth medium has been shown to have a major influence on toxin production (Bernheimer, 1972). It was therefore decided to test the effects of two different sources of BHI medium on the levels of SLS produced.

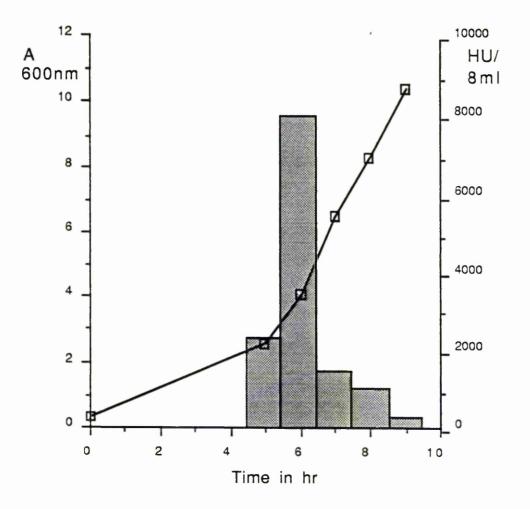
The yield of SLS after induction from strains 55903M and C203S grown in Oxoid BHI-BM and Difco BHI-BM under identical conditions was compared. Strain 55903M grew profusely in both Oxoid and Difco BHI-BM. After 6 h of growth, five inductions (each induction was of 8 ml) were made from the culture grown in Oxoid BHIB but only the first induction yielded haemolytic material after 6 h growth. Eleven inductions were made from the culture Difco BHIB and all yielded haemolytic material (Fig. 13. a).

Five inductions were also made from the cell pellets of strain C2O3S after 6 h of growth in Oxoid BHIB and only the first induction yielded haemolytic material whereas all eleven inductions made from the cells grown in Difco BHIB were haemolytic (Fig. 13. b). The finding that both strain C2O3S and strain 55903M produced higher yield of SLS in Difco BHIB corresponded with the findings of previous workers (Cal@pdra and Oginsky1975, Lai *et al.*, 1978 and Alouf and Loridan, 1986). It was interesting to note that there was no obvious

.

Fig: 11. SLS production in relation to growth rate (C203S)

The line shows the absorption of culture at 600nm. The histograms show the HU/8 ml.



.

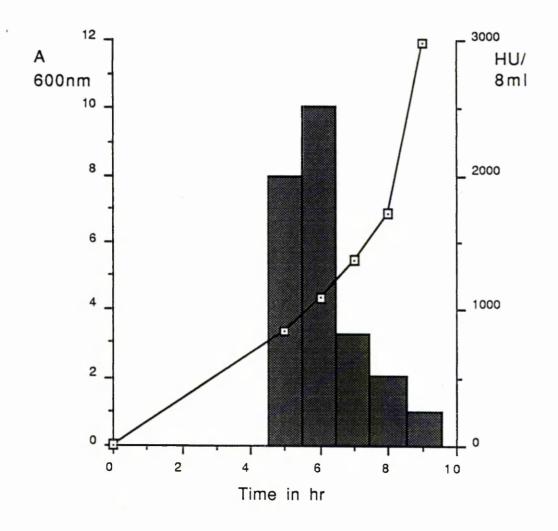
.

Fig: 12. SLS production in relation to growth rate (55903M)

The line shows the absorption of culture at 600nm. The histograms show the HU/ 8 ml.

,

.



•

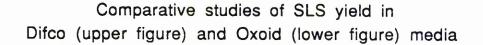
Fig: 13 a and b

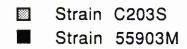
,

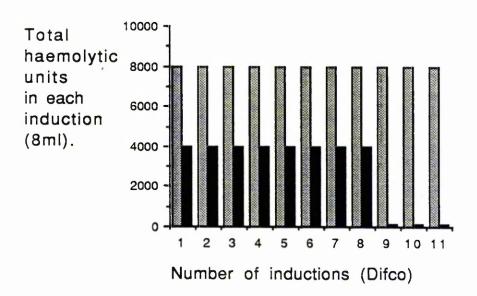
. .

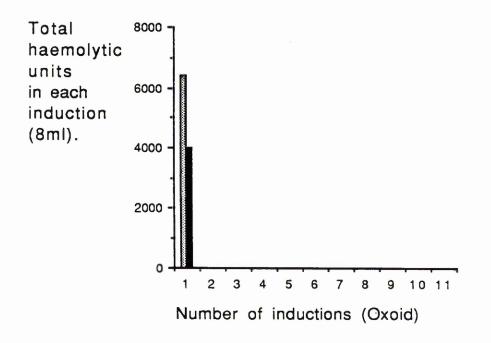
Comparative studies of SLS yield in Difco and Oxoid media

The histograms show HU from strains C2035 (stippled bars) and strain 55903M (solid bars).









- 93 -

correlation between amount of growth and SLS released upon induction. Both strains under investigation grew to high cell density in either Oxoid or Difco BHIB but only cells grown in Difco culture medium gave high yields of SLS. The nutrit ional basis for this is unclear.

9.4. Purification of SLS

The method of purification used was that described by Alouf and Loridan (1986). A summary of purification data is presented in Table 11. The elution profile shown in Fig. 14 revealed the haemolytic activity of the crude material was recovered as a single sharp peak in fractions 19-22 (each fraction of 3 ml) from the hydroxylapatite column. Fraction 19 gave the highest haemolytic activity (8000 HU/ml) and contained approximately 0.11 mg of purified SLS with a specific activity of approximately 3.5X10<sup>s</sup> HU/mg protein. The peak haemolytic fractions were pooled (about 9 ml total volume) and were assessed by SDS PAGE, native PAGE and by their inhibitory activity in the chemiluminesence response of PMNs.

9.5. Criteria of purity

#### 9.5.1. SDS-Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis

The degree of purity of the peak fractions from hydroxylapatite chromatography was assessed by 15% SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The peak haemolytic fractions contained a low molecular weight peptide which proved difficult to visualize by Coomassie blue staining of SDS-PAGE gels but was detected by the silver staining technique (Oakleyet al., 1980). The low molecular weight peptide in crude and purified preparation (Fig. 15 and 16) always ran at the dye front of the gel as visualized through silver

•

Table 11.

Purification and recovery of SLS

ı

| Purification and Recovery of Streptolysin S | Purification Recovery<br>Factor (%)        | 1                   | 4.7 22                               | 2.5 11                |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
|                                             | Total Protein Specific activity Pr<br>(mg) | 9 x 10 <sup>4</sup> | 3.5 x 105                            | 3.5 x 10 <sup>5</sup> |
|                                             | Total Protein<br>(mg)                      | 2.5                 | 0.13                                 | 0.11                  |
|                                             | Total activity<br>(Hu)                     | 220000              | 49152                                | 36864                 |
|                                             | Volume<br>(ml)                             | 220                 | 9<br>(18, 19, 20<br>Three fractions) | Э                     |
|                                             | Purification<br>step                       | Starting material   | Hydroxylapatite<br>column            | Fraction 19           |

`

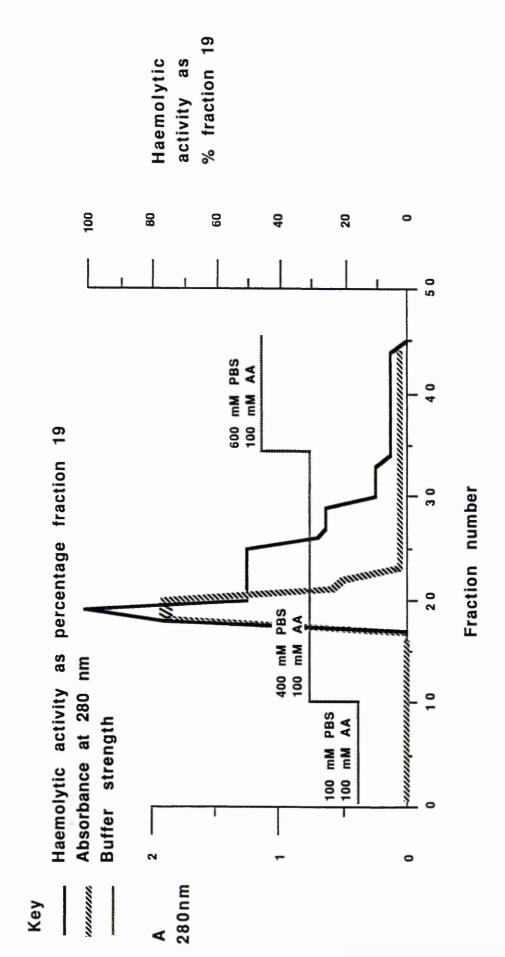
•

<u>Fig. 14</u>

,

Elution profile from hydroxylapatite column

Elution profile from hydroxylapatite column.



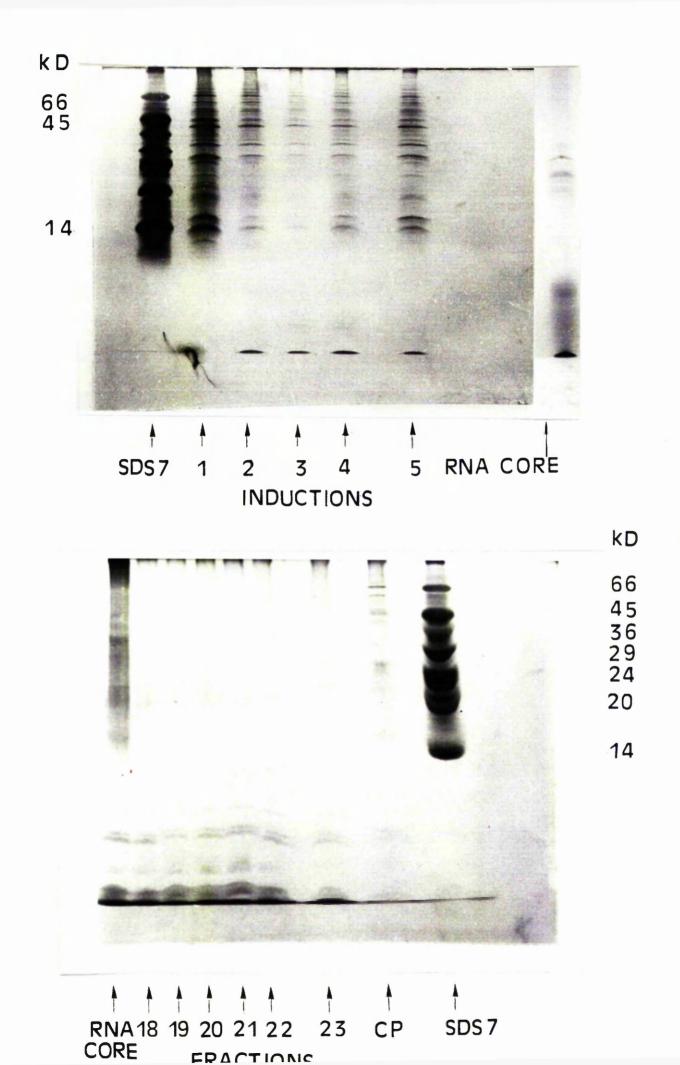
- 96 -

# Fig. 15. Analysis of crude preparation of SLS by SDS Polyacrylamide gel

Samples from five inductions (tracks 1-5) were taken and analysed on 15% SDS polyacrylamide gel. The standard was SDS-70L (Sigma) and the gel was silver stained .

## Fig. 16. Analysis of purified preparation of SLS by SDS Polyacrylamide gel

Samples from 6 hydroxylapatite column fractions were run on 15% SDS-polyacrylamide gel. The standard was SDS-70L (Sigma) and the gel was visualized by silver staining. CP indiccates crude preparation of SLS.



staining whereas appearance of other extra bands were all components of yeast RNA-core, the carrier molecule.

When RNA-core was run as a control under the same conditions, it was observed that the RNA-core profile was similiar to that of purified SLS. Almost the same pattern of bands was observed and it was difficult to determine the possible molecular weight of SLS as both RNA-core and SLS migrated at the dye front. Alouf and Loridan (1986) reported that SLS migrated in SDS-PAGE gels with the dye front, although the RNA-core profile in the gel was not reported. The molecular weight of SLS was reported to be below 4000.

#### 9.5.2. Native-Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis

In order to detect the biological activity of SLS, native PAGE was first run and developed by the silver staining technique of Oakley, et al., (1980). It was found that the crude material from the induction buffer (Fig. 17) and the purified preparation (Fig. 18) both contained a band which was not present in the sample of RNA-core which was included as a control.

9.5.3. Zymogram

Since the molecular weight and identity of the SLS peptide was not clear from the SDS and native PAGE analysis, a zymogram technique was used to locate SLS by its haemolytic activity on native-PAGE. A native SDS PAGE gel was run with a duplicate set of bands at side of the gel. After electrophoresis was completed, the gel was cut into two halves, one was stained by the silver technique, (Fig. 19. b) and the duplicate half was used for the zymogram assay (Fig. 19. a). A suspension of washed sheep RBCs and agar was mixed and overlaid on the gel. After incubation, an area of lysed RBCs appeared in a position on

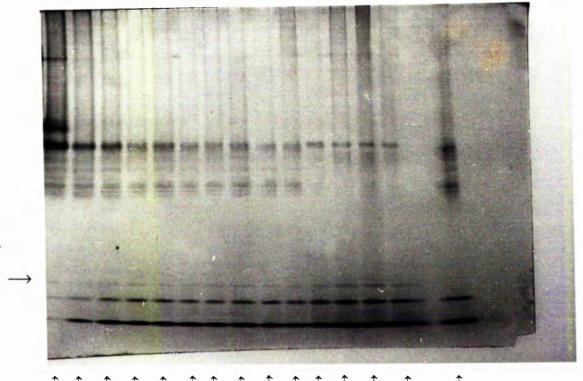
## Fig. 17. Analysis of crude preparation of SLS by Native

<u>Polyacrylamide ge</u>l

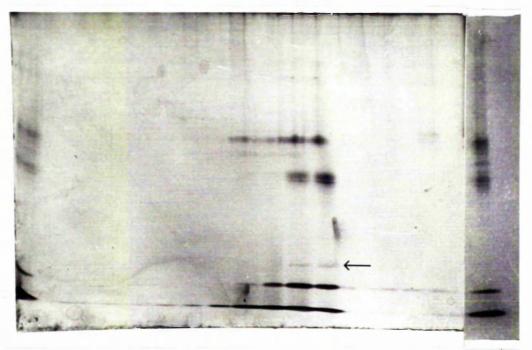
Samples from fourteen (14) inductions were analyzed on 15% native polyacrylamide gel. RNA-core (Sigma) was also analyzed as control. The gel was silver stained. Arrow indicates the suspected band of SLS.

## Fig. 18. Analysis of purified preparation of SLS by Native Polyacrylamide gel

Different fractions of purified SLS were analyzed on 15% native PAGE. RNA-core was also run. The gel was silver stained. Arrow indicates the suspected band of SLS.



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 RNA CORE



- 99 -

the gel equivalent to that occupied by the stained band, tentatively identified as SLS. Three fractions were assayed by this method and fraction 19 produced a larger haemolytic zone than fractions 18 and 20, which also corresponded to the result of the assay for total haemolytic activity.

9.5.4. Agar diffus ion assay

A more direct assay of haemolytic activity than the doubling dilution titration assay was the measurement of haemolytic zone diameter in blood agar. Three fractions were tested in this diffusion assay in blood agar. The wells in the last horizontal row served as negative controls. Fraction 19 in column no 2 of Fig. 20 exhibited marked haemolysis surrounding the wells. This result supports the observation from the zymogram in which the same fraction exhibited the largest haemolytic zone. In the fourth horizontal row there was no haemolysis at all suggesting the absence of SLS and it was clear that haemolysis was not the feature of RNA-core or ammonium acetate but it was due to SLS.

9.6. Western blotting of SLS

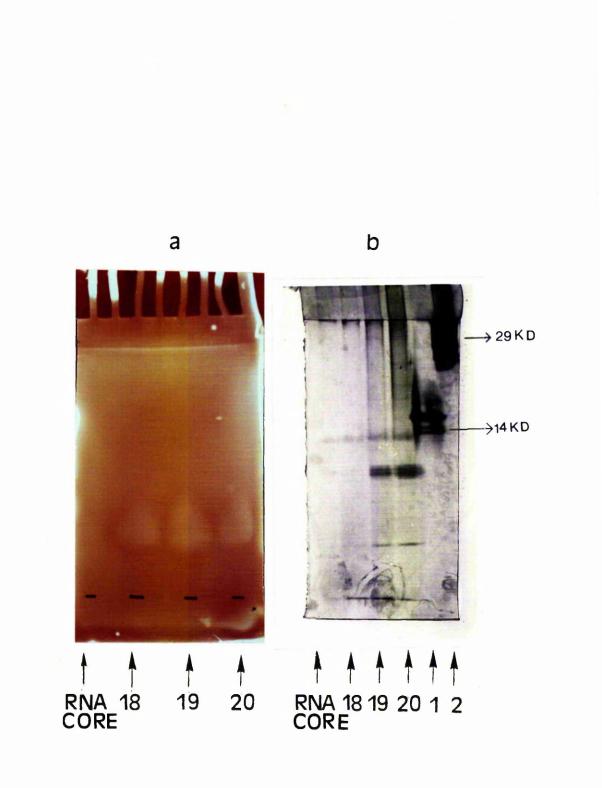
Attemps were made to transfer SLS onto nitrocellulose and Hybond C membranes for further characterization by amino acid sequencing and animal inoculation for antigenicity. Purified SLS, in its native state was run on non-denaturing PAGE. Keeping in mind the low molecular weight of SLS, nitrocellulose membranes of two different pore-sizes (0.45  $\mu$ m and 0.22  $\mu$ m) were used. As Fig 21 indicated, neither of the two membranes showed any transferred band except one, that was of carbonic anhydrase (mol.wt.standard) after an overnight Fig. 19. Localization of SLS by zymogram

(a) Three haemolytic fractions of purified SLS (18, 19, 20) were run on 15% native polyacrylamide gel. 1% purified agar containing 2% v/v washed sheep erythrocytes was over overlaid on the gel to detect haemolytic activity after electrophoretic separation had occured.

Native polyacrylamide gel (other portion of gel)

(b)

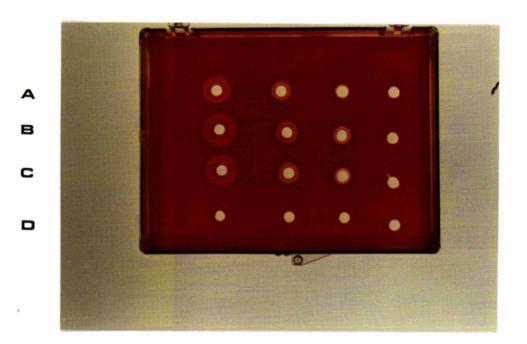
The fractions (18, 19 and 20) loaded as duplicate of zymogram gel with mol: wt standard markers (Carbonic anhydrase and  $\alpha$ -lactalbumin and were run in 15% native polyacrylamide gel. RNA-core was run as control. The gel was silver stained. Lane 1 and 2 represent  $\alpha$ -Lactalbumin and Carbonic anhydrase respectively.



.

Figure 20. Blood agar diffusion assay of purified SLS

Ten-fold dilution of SLS were assayed on 7% washed SRBCs blood agar. Rows 1, 2, 3 and 4 correpond to 10  $\mu$ l vol of neat, 10<sup>-1</sup>, 10<sup>-2</sup> and 10<sup>-3</sup> dilutions. Row A = fraction 18, B = fraction 19, C = fraction 20, D = fraction 21. The diameter of the haemolytic zone is proportional to haemolytic activity.



transfer at 30 V. The same result was obtained when:

(a) SLS was transferred for different lengths of time ;.e., 10, 20, 30, and 60 min at 30 V.

(b) SLS was transferred over-night at different voltage (10, 15, and20 V).

Both wet and semi-dry (Nova blot) techniques were tried with 0.45  $\mu$ m and 0.22  $\mu$ m membranes but in all cases SLS proved difficult to visualize by Ponceau S and Coomassie-blue staining. This observation suggests that Ponceau S staining may not be sensitive enough to detect SLS or that SLS may pass through the membranes during transfer.

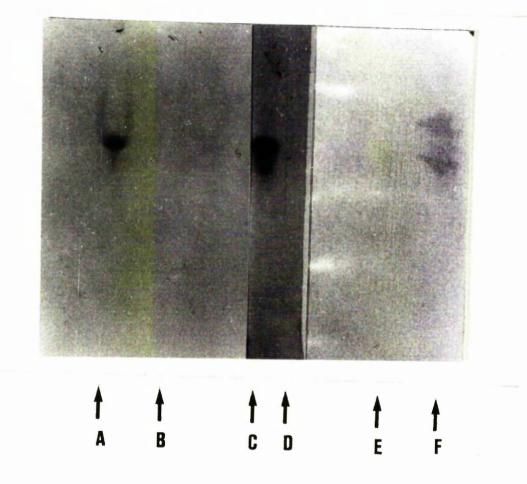
9.7. <u>Stability and storage study</u>

SLS is unusually labile (Bernheimer 1983) and its instability through manipulative steps, probably due to its hydrophobicity, has hampered its purification and characterization (Ginsburg , 1970 ; Lai et al., 1978, Alouf and Loridan, 1986). Aliquots of SLS were stored at a range of different temperatures with or without a supplement of glycerol or bovine serum albumin (Table 12). The results suggested that SLS is completely stable for more than six (6) months when stored with a supplement of 0.1% bovine serum albumin plus 20% glycerol at  $-20^{\circ}$ C. When bovine serum albumin alone (0.1% or 0.5%) was used for the storage of SLS without glycerol, there was 99% loss of SLS activity within 12 h. (Table 12) SLS in buffer (400 mM-potassium phosphate /100 mM ammonium acetate (pH 7.0) alone, it lost 99% of its activity in 12 h at  $37^{\circ}$ C, 4°C or  $-20^{\circ}$ C.

#### 9.8. Effect of Chloramphenicol on the synthesis of SLS

Weak haemolysis was observed at 1/10 dilution of material obtained from "cells A" (see Materials and Methods 5.12) but at no Fig. 21. Western blotting of SLS

Purified SLS was run on native-PAGE and attempted to transfer on nitrocellulose and Hybond C membranes at 30 V for 12 h. Lane A represents carbonic anhydrase (mol.wt. standard), lane B represents SLS (fraction 19) on nitrocellulose membrane. Lane C represents carbonic anhydrase, lane D represents SLS (fraction 19) on Coomassie-stained gel. Lane E represents SLS (fraction 19), and lane F represents  $\alpha$ -lactalbumin (mol.wt. standard) on Hybond-C membrane.



higher dilutions, whereas a titre of 1000 HU /ml was found in material obtained from "cells B" which was suspended in induction buffer without added chloramphenicol (Table 13), On resuspension and induction for a second time, no haemolysis was observed in material obtained from "cells A" (induction buffer containing chloramphenicol) whereas "cells B" gave a titre of 1000 HU/ml. Induction 3 gave the similiar results. In order to study the reversibility of SLS synthesis, "cells A" were suspended and induced in induction buffer alone on the 4th induction cycle, following 3 cycles of induction in the presence of chloramphenicol. On removal of chloramphenicol, the titre of induction cycle 4 was 100 HU/ml. This was also the case after a further induction cycle in the absence of chloramphenicol (in induction 5). Upon induction in the presence of an increased concentration of chloramphenicol (400  $\mu$ g/ml, in induction 6), no haemolytic material was released thereafter. Removal of chloramphenicol from the subsequent induction cycles (induction 7 and 8) yielded no further haemolytic material. After 8 cycles of induction in control induction buffer (cells B), the titre was 1000 HU/ml. The loss of reversibility in the effects of chloramphenicol after induction 6 in "cells A" indicated an irreversible loss of protein synthetic ability (possibly cell death). These findings are in keeping with those of Bernheimer (1949), who demonstrated by using variety of enzymes poisons that SLS is formed only when the cocci are actively metabolizing and that SLS was not released from a preformed pool. 9.9. Iron and haemolysin (SLS) production in Streptococcus pyogenes

Many different phenotypic changes occur in bacteria during growth under iron-limiting conditions (Weinberg, 1978). The activity

•

Table 12. LOSS OF SLS ACTIVITY AT DIFFERENT CONDITIONS

| TEMPERATURE             | TIME IN HOURS    | SLS ACTIVITY<br>HU/ml |
|-------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| Immediate after passing | 12 hours         | 16384                 |
| through column.         |                  |                       |
| <u>Room temperature</u> | -do-             | 128                   |
| 37°C                    | -do-             | 128                   |
| + <b>4</b> °C           | -do-             | 128                   |
| -20°C                   | -do-             | 128                   |
| With Glycerol           |                  |                       |
| 5 <b>%</b> +4°C         | -do-             | 16                    |
| 5 <b>%</b> 20°C         | -do-             | 16                    |
| 10 <b>%</b> +4°C        | -do-             | 16                    |
| 10 <b>2</b> -20°C       | -do-             | 16                    |
| 50 <b>%+4°C</b>         | -do-             | 16                    |
| 50 <b>2</b> -20°C       | -do-             | 16                    |
| <u>In Ice Box</u>       | -d <b>o</b>      | 256                   |
| With Bovine Serum Album | in (BSA)         |                       |
| 0.1%BSA+20glycerol(-20° | C) 6 (six) month | 100% sta              |
| 0. 1%BSA (-20°C)        | 12 h             | 128                   |
| 0. 5%BSA (-20°C)        | 12 h             | 128                   |

.

| <u>Table 13</u> . | EFFECT OF | CHLORAMPHENICOL | ON | SLS | PRODUCTION |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------------|----|-----|------------|
|                   |           |                 |    |     |            |

| HU/ml | Cells B*<br>(250 ml) | HU/ml | Cells A*<br>(250 ml)    | Induction<br>no: |
|-------|----------------------|-------|-------------------------|------------------|
|       | <u>Only IB</u>       |       | <u>IB+ 200 μg/ml Cm</u> |                  |
| 1000  |                      | 10    |                         | 1                |
| 1000  |                      | _     |                         | 2                |
| 1000  |                      | -     |                         | 3                |
|       |                      |       | <u>Only IB</u>          |                  |
| 1000  |                      | 100   |                         | 4                |
| 1000  |                      | 100   |                         | 5                |
|       |                      |       | <u>IB+400 µg/ml Ст</u>  |                  |
| 1000  |                      | -     |                         | 6                |
|       |                      |       | <u>Only IB</u>          |                  |
| 1000  |                      | -     |                         | 7                |
| 1000  |                      | -     |                         | 8                |
| 1000  |                      | -     |                         | 9                |
| 1000  |                      |       |                         | 10               |
| 1000  |                      |       |                         | 14               |
| 100   |                      |       |                         | 15               |
| 100   |                      |       |                         | 16               |
| 100   |                      |       |                         | 17               |

C203S was grown in 500 ml BHI-BM .  $\clubsuit$  Culture was divided into two samples of 250 ml named A and B . IB= Induction Buffer . Cm= Chloramphenicol of membrane transport systems for iron and the production of extracellular or cell associated iron-complexing compounds called siderophores are usually increased dramatically by iron deprivation (Neilands, 1981). In addition, bacterial toxins such as diphtheria toxin from *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (Russell and Holmes, 1985), Toxin A from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (Bjorn *et al.*, 1978), Shiga toxin from *Shigella dysenteriae* (van Heyningen and Gladstone., 1953 and tetanus toxin from *Clostridium tetani* (Mueller *et al.*, 1945) are produced in optimal yields only in low-iron medium.

Two strains of S. pyogenes used in this study C203S and 55903M were grown in iron-restricted and iron-replete medium. The medium used in this study was a complex medium BHI-BM (Difco) as discussed in Materials and Methods . The iron content of this medium was 39 nmole /ml as measured by the Iron Binding Capacity Kit (Sigma). EDDA was added at a concentration giving a 20-fold molar excess over Fe and broth was stored at 4°C for 24 h in order to allow further binding of Fe in the medium . After 6 h growth, the cells (grown in iron-restricted and iron-replete medium) were harvested, washed and suspended in induction buffer. After induction with RNA-core, the supernate material was collected and examined for haemolytic activity. The supernates obtained from both induced cells (grown in ironrestricted and iron-replete medium) gave the same haemolytic titre (1000 HU/ml). It was observed from the experiments on growth in the presence of (see Result 11 and 11.1 and 11.2) various chelators, that there was no absolute requirement for iron in the growth medium of any strains of Streptococcus pyogenes group A. These findings also showed

-107-

that SLS is not regulated by iron nor was there any dependence of SLS production on iron.

10. The influence of purified SLS on the chemiluminescence response of rabbit peritoneal neutrophils to FMLP

Chemiluminescence is the process of emission of light as the result of an exergonic chemical reaction, when the vibrationally excited product of a reaction relaxes back to the ground state. The emitter of light is the product of the reaction and is structurally different from the initial substrate (Anthony, 1986).

Alteration of the chemiluminescence response of PMNs, which itself results from stimulation by chemotactic agents, provides a uniquely sensitive assay for measuring biological activity of many bacterial toxins including pertussis toxins, streptolysin 0 and adenyl cyclase toxins.

Polymorphonuclear leucocytes (PMNs) in their resting state consume little oxygen. Perturbation or stimulation via the plasma membrane can initiate a burst of metabolic activity with an accompanying dramatic increase in oxygen consumption, superoxide production and the formation of hydrogen peroxide and singlet oxygen. When this free radical returns from its excited state to its ground state there is emission of a photon. Such chemiluminescence is measurable during stimulation by chemotactic peptides such as FMet-Leu-Phe or by phagocytosis. This chemiluminescent response can be affected by a number of bacterial toxins which interact with cell membranes and in some cases, may be a major mechanism in the virulence of the toxigenic bacterium.

FMLP-induced PMN activation responses include directed

-109-

chemotaxis, degranulation, oxygen radical generation, and arachidonate metabolite release (Steven *et al.*, 1988).

In this section, the aim was to investigate the effects of purified SLS on PMNs function using a sensitive chemiluminescence assay. Previous studies suggest that most strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* (group A, beta-haemolytic) contain a potent leukotoxic factor (Ofek, *et al.*, 1970). When bacteria containing relatively large quantities of this factor are ingested by or come into contact with 1957). PMNs, the neutrophils are destroyed (Wilson<sub>and</sub> Salt,  $\frac{1}{r}$  Death of PMNs is associated with intracytoplasmic rupture of PMN granules ; this release of granule contents is thought to be the leukocidal killing 1960). mechanism (Bernheimer and Schwartz,  $\frac{1}{r}$  Ofek, *et al.*(1970) concluded that the factor inducing granule rupture was cell-bound streptolysin S (SLS).

SLS, lyses erythrocytes and other types of eukaryotic cells and membrane-bound organelles (Hryniewicz,ef. al,1930, Wannamaker, 1983; Alouf, 1986). Ofek, et al., (1970) reported that cell-bound haemolysin killed mouse peritoneal macrophages within 30 min whereas RNA-SLS or serum-SLS required 60-180 min for complete killing (as assessed by the trypan blue vital staining). However, such direct comparison between the killing effects of cell-bound haemolysin and RNA-core haemolysin is not meaningful, since the amounts of SLS in each case were not known. Thus, the observed lethal effects reported by Ofek could be due to SLS acting in concert with other exoproducts in the whole cell preparations or to products entirely unrelated to SLS. In order to further investigate the effects of purified SLS on phagocytic cells (rabbit peritoneal neutrophils), experiments were designed to detect whether this toxin could cause changes in the membrane-mediated -110-

chemiluminescence response. Any membrane-associated events may alter the ability of PMNs to generate chemilumin escence when induced with FMLP in a luminol-amplified response. Toxin-dependent changes in chemiluminescent response of PMNs have been reported with SLO (Andersen, and Duncan, 1980) *P. haemolytica* leucotoxin (Czuprynski and Noel, 1990) adenylate cyclase toxin (Kharazmi, *et al.*, 1984) and several others (Alouf, 1986).

Purified SLS, at concentrations of between 8000 HU/ml and 256 HU/ml, when added directly to FMLP-induced rabbit PMNs, caused inhibition of the PMNs chemiluminescence response (Fig. 22). PMNs without FMLP (;-e. PMNs not induced), served as back-ground controls, and gave no significant endogenous CL response compared to cells induced with FMLP, which served as a positive control.

The inihibition of the chemiluminescence response could be a reflection of a lethal dose of SLS for PMNs or could reflect a more specific effect of the toxin on the membrane-mediated chemiluminescent response.

10.1 Effect of SLS at sublethal doses on chemiluminescence response

of peritoneal neutrophils to FMLP

It has previously been reported that at sublethal concentrations (;.e. 5 to 250 HU/ml), SLS can disturb specific functions in certain subpopulations of T cells (Hryniewicz, *et al.*, 1980, 1984). In particular, SLS was shown to reduce the number of Trosettes and phytohemagglutinin (PHA) responsiveness *in vitro*. The experiments reported here were designed to investigate how potent was SLS as an inhibitor of the CL response. The effects of SLS at various concentrations (256 HU/ml and ten-fold dilutions) on the CL response -111-

### Fig. 22.

Effect of SLS on rabbit peritoneal neutrophils: FMLP-induced CL response

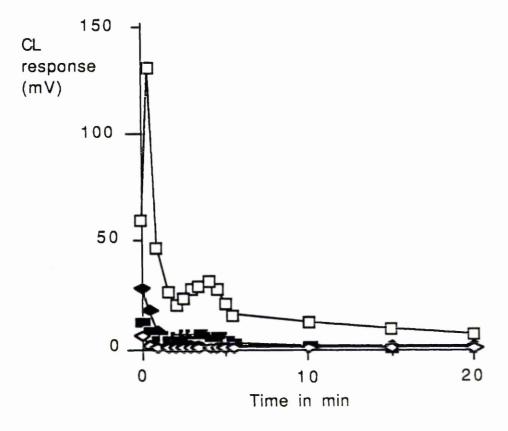
SLS solution (100  $\mu$ l of 256 HU/ml) was directly added to PMNs (prewarmed at 37°C for 15 min) suspended in buffer. Luminol and FMLP were added immediately before the start of the measurement of chemiluminescence began (0 time). The figure shown is a mean of four observations and is representative of seven separate experiments.

### <u>Key</u>:

| 00        | Positive control, cells plus FMLP  |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| <b>+</b>  | Negative control, cells minus FMLP |
| <b></b> 2 | Cells , plus FMLP, and SLS         |

←→ Cells , minus FMLP , plus SLS

## Effect of SLS on FMLP-induced chemiluminescence response.



of PMNs stimulated by FMLP was assayed. The CL response was greater with increasing dilutions of SLS from  $10^{-1}$  (25.6 HU/ml) to  $10^{-4}$  (0.256 HU/ml) (Fig.23). PMNs without FMLP gave no marked CL response compared with FMLP control. The result suggested that 50% inhibition of CL response of neutrophils occurred between neat and  $10^{-1}$ . The dilution  $10^{-2}$ ,  $10^{-3}$ ,  $10^{-4}$ .  $10^{-5}$  showed no inhibition. It is evident from these experiments that SLS acts in a dose dependent manner.

10.2. Effect of SLS on opsonophagocytosis

### Effect of SLS using different concentrations of normal rabbit serum for opsonization (Washed zymosan) Phagocytes emit chemiluminescence when ingesting bacteria or

other particles (Lofgren *et al.*, 1980). When PMNs are exposed to opsonized particles, the chemiluminescent response associated with phagocytosis is characterized by a single peak of emission.

Complement proteins interact in a precise sequence of reactions leading to the production of biologically active cleavage fragments capable of interacting with microbial cells, in some cases promoting opsonization.

First, the effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan was examined. Fresh whole normal rabbit serum (100  $\mu$ l of neat, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8 and 1/16 dilutions) and 100  $\mu$ l of SLS (256 HU/ml) were each added to a series of Eppendorf tube (see Materials and Methods 7.1.1). Zymosan (100  $\mu$ l) was then added to all tubes, and tubes were again incubated at 37°C for 30 min and the tube contents then washed twice with PBS. The washed zymosan particles were used in CL assay.

A noteworthy observation was that SLS failed to inhibit opsonization of zymosan at neat but, at 1/2 dilution of serum SLS Fig. 23.

Effect of SLS at sub lethal doses : FMLP-induced CL response

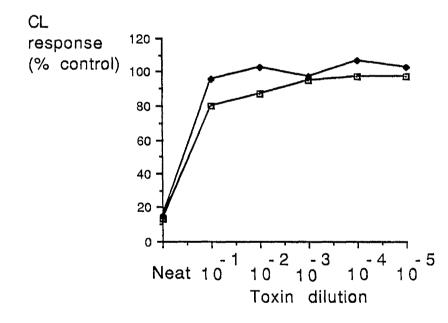
SLS (256 HU/ml) was diluted in PBS and various dilutions of SLS (100  $\mu$ l) were directly added to PMNs (prewarmed at 37°C for 30 min). Buffer, Luminol and and FMLP were added just before putting samples into the luminometer. The figure shown is a mean of 3 observations and is representative of six separate experiments.

<u>Key</u>:

 $\textcircled{\sc 0}$  , Ten-fold concentration of SLS , cells plus FMLP

✦→ , Ten-fold concentration of SLS , cells minus FMLP

## Effect of SLS on FMLP-induced chemiluminescence response: sub lethal doses.



induced a rapid and dramatically diminished opsonization of zymosan (Fig. 24). It was expected that SLS would be removed after 2 washes and that this washing should enable SLS-treated opsonized zymosan to behave like normal opsonized zymosan (SLS-untreated opsonized zymosan) in uptake by phagocytes. However, a result representative of 4 experiments (Fig 24) shows a marked decrease in the uptake of SLStreated opsonized zymosan when compared to zymosan opsonized in the absence of SLS. From this result, it was difficult to assess whether the decreased uptake was due to the influence of SLS on the complement system or on some other serum factor. The effect of SLS may have been similiar to M-protein which has been reported to inhibit the alternative pathway and thus cause failure of the opsonization process, which in turn resulted in resistance to phagocytosis.

The experiments were repeated several times with essentially identical results and in all future experiments involving opsonization and phagocytosis, serum was used at a 1 in 2 dilution.

### 10.3. Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan by rabbit serum

#### (unwashed zymosan)

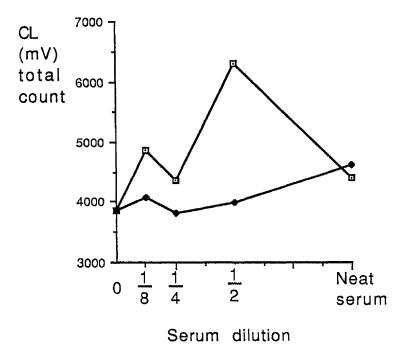
After optimising the dilution of fresh normal serum (1/2) for opsonization of zymosan, ten-fold serial dilution of SLS were incubated with 1/2 dilution of fresh rabbit serum for 30 min at 37°C. The mixture was further incubated with zymosan for 30 min at 37°C. The suspension was centrifuged (see Materials and Methods 7.1.2) and the unwashed zymosan was used in the CL assay. Fig. 25 demonstrates the effect of SLS (256 HU/ml) and its ten-fold dilutions. It indicated that SLS inhibited opsonisation at 256 HU/ml (neat) and 50% inhibition occurred between neat and 10<sup>-1</sup> dilution (25.6 HU/ml). It is Fig: 24

# Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan by rabbit serum (washed zymosan)

The figure shown is a mean of four observations and is representative of seven separate experiments.

### Key:

- E-E Fresh rabbit serum (100  $\mu$ l of neat , 1/2 , 1/4 and 1/8 dilutions plus 100  $\mu$ l zymosan
- ←→ Fresh rabbit serum (100 µl of neat , 1/2 , 1/4 and 1/8 dilutions plus 100 µl of ten fold dilution of purified plus Zymosan



e

-116-

Fig: 25.

### Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan by rabbit servm

(unwashed zymosan)

The figure shown is a representative of 6 separate experiments.

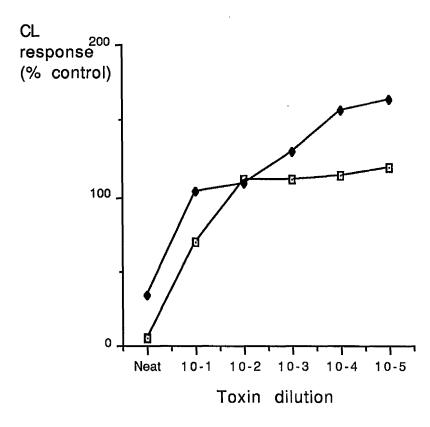
r

Key:

| 00 | Fresh rabbit serum (100 $\mu$ l of, 1/2, plus 100 $\mu$ l of ten |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | fold dilution of purified SLS plus Zymosan                       |

←→ Fresh rabbit serum (100 µl of 1/2 dilution plus 100 µl of ten-fold dilution of purified SLS

Effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan (unwashed)



-117-

important to point out here that SLS behaved in a dose dependent manner, similiar to its behaviour in the straightforward killing of PMNs-induced by FMLP. The exact mechanism of this blockade of opsonization was not clear and involvement of either the complement pathway or some other serum factor (s) could not be differentiated in this experiment.

10.4. Effect of heating and Mg++EGTA on rabbit normal serum

In the light of the observation that SLS inhibited opsonization of zymosan, the study of opsonophagocytosis was subsequently extended to elucidate whether SLS could affect either of the Classical or Alternate complement pathways.

Experiments were designed to detect the pathways involved in opsonization. The CL produced by phagocytosis of zymosan preopsonized in whole normal rabbit serum (total complement pathway) was compared with the CL after opsonization with heated serum (no complement activity) or MgEGTA-chelated serum (alternate pathway, [AP] only) (Mathey et al., 1981). Representative records of the CL responses in experiments following phagocytosis of zymosan after opsonization with whole or complement-depleted serum are shown in Fig. 26. Inactivation of complement by heating decreased CL to 43% of the whole serum level, showing that phagocytosis occurred less efficiently without complement. Also CL in the MgEGTA-chelated samples was significantly decreased compared to unheated serum. MgEGTA blocked the Classical pathway but did not completely block zymosan opsonization suggesting opsonization partly was a function of the classical pathway and partly involved the alternate pathway. These results suggest that SLS can inhibit opsonization, either by the Classical or Alternate pathways.

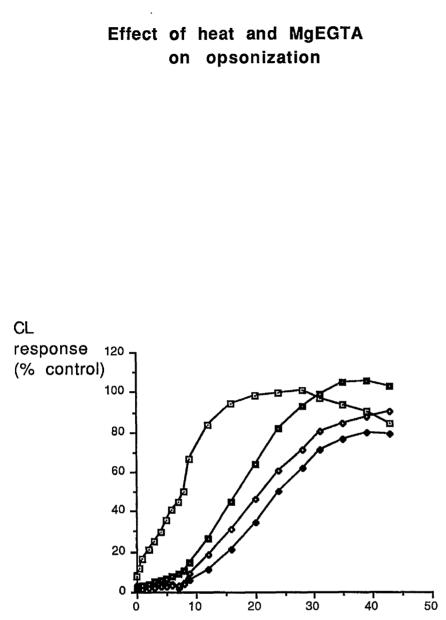
<u>Fig</u>: 26

.

### Effect of heating and MgEGTA on rabit normal serum

The figure shown is a representative of three separate experiments .

| Ke <b>y</b> | Zymosan | Rabbit serum | Heated rabbit serum | Mg++EGTA | PBS     |
|-------------|---------|--------------|---------------------|----------|---------|
|             |         |              |                     |          |         |
| 80          | 100 µl  | 100 µl(1/2)  | _                   | -        | 100 µl  |
|             | -do-    |              | 100 µl(1/2)         | -        | 100 µl  |
| BB          | -do-    | 100 µl(1/2)  | -                   | 100 µl   |         |
| <b>~</b> \$ | do-     | -            | -                   | -        | 200 µl  |
|             |         |              |                     |          | <u></u> |



Time in min

#### 10.5. Effect of SLS on bound opsonin (serum)

The effect of SLS on bound opsonin (serum) was determined where zymosan was preopsonized with fresh serum and then exposed to SLS (see Materials and Methods 7.1.6). SLS-treated opsonized zymosan induced a markedly reduced CL response as compared to CL response of SLS-untreated opsonized zymosan, which served as positive control (Table 14). The data presented suggests that SLS might affect bound opsonin in 3 possible ways :

(;) causing C3b to dissociate from the zymosan

- (;;) inactivate the C3b, for example by binding to C3b to hide its receptor site recognized by PMNs
- (;;;) binding to C3b or other complement proteins which may act as carriers releasing SLS later to kill PMNs

#### 10.6. Effect of SLS on responsiveness of PMNs

To determine whether these changes in CL induced by SLS (opsonized zymosan-treated SLS (256 HU/mL)) were irreversible and deleterious to the PMNs, the ability of the cells to respond to a second opsonized particle, namely opsonized zymosan (SLS- untreated), was studied. PMNs exposed to opsonized zymosan (SLS- treated) exhibited no CL response when a second dose of opsonized zymosan was added (Fig. 27). The degree of suppression of the zymosan-induced CL was directly related to the dose of SLS. PMNs challenged with opsonized zymosan (SLS-untreated) exhibited an insignificant response after addition of a second dose of opsonized zymosan after 5 min whereas PMNs challenged with unopsonised zymosan (control) exhibited a significant CL response.

.

<u>CL response (counts)</u>

### Table 14 EFFECT OF SLS ON BOUND OPSONIN

<u>Test particle</u>

The table shown is a mean of three observations and is representative of five separate experiments.

Opsonin . PBS 25 Opsonin . zymosan 592 Neat SLS 171 .. • • 1/2 SLS 316 • • . . 1/5 SLS 417 • • • • 1/10 SLS 421 • • . .

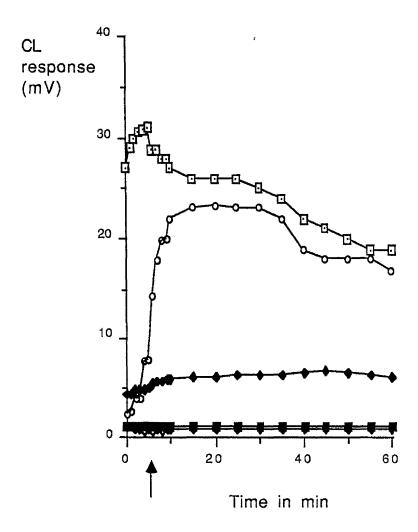
Fig. 27.

### Effect of an additional opsonized zymosan

The figure shown is a mean of four observations and is representative of six experiments.

<u>Key</u>:

| ÐÐ          | Control, (opsonized zymosan), after 5 min additional         |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | opsonized zymosan was added                                  |
| <b>++</b>   | Unopsonized control                                          |
| <b>00</b>   | Unopsonized control, after 5 min opsonized zymosan was added |
| <b>}</b> \$ | SLS treated opsonized zymosan,                               |
| 38          | SLS treated opsonized zymosan, after 5 min additional        |
|             | opsonized zymosan was added                                  |
|             | Time of addition of opsonized zymosan                        |
|             |                                                              |



## 10.7. Effect of SLS in lucigenin-amplified CL assay : FMLP induced CL response

The reactions of luminol and lucigenin with alkaline  $H_2O_2$  to yield CL appear superficially to be similar, and oxygenation is common to both reactions (Allen, 1982). However, the reaction mechanism are fundamentally different. Luminol-CL is the net result of "oxidative" oxygenation. On the other hand, lucigenin-CL results from reductive oxygenation ; that is, generation of excited *N*-methylacridone involves the two-electron reduction of lucigenin and oxygenation. Hence, luminol is oxidised by products of  $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} myeloperoxidasesystem$  (Decatelet *et al.*, 1982) whereas lucigenin dependent CL is almost entirely dependent on superoxide production (Allen, 1981).

The possible CL response of FMLP-induced rabbit neutrophils exposed to SLS in the presence of lucigenin, (bis-N-methylacridinumnitrate) was determined. SLS inhibited completely the lucigeninamplified CL response when compared to the cells not exposed to SLS (Fig. 28).

### 10.8. <u>Sensitivity of cells towards SLS</u>

In order to compare the relative sensitivity of different cells available for determination of SLS biological activity, an assay was performed where the sensitivity of sheep red blood cells (haemolytic assay) was compared to that of rabbit peritoneal neutrophils (CL assay).

### Haemolytic Assay

0.5 ml 2% v/v SRBC  $\equiv$  2.4x10<sup>e</sup> cells.

0.1 ml toxin added . End point detection = 1/256.

Fig. 28.

The figure shown is a mean of three observations and is representative of five separate experiments.

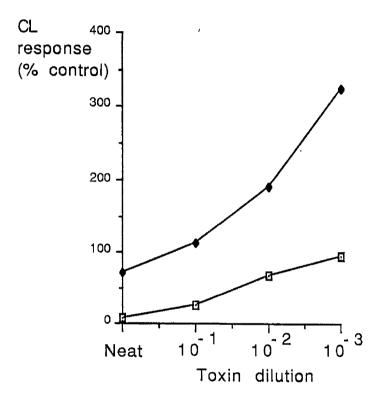
Effect of SLS in lucigenin CL assay on rabbit peritoneal neutrophils: FMLP-induced CL response

> SLS (100 µl of 256 HU/ml) was directly added to PMNs (prewarmed at 37°C for 15 min) suspended in buffer. Lucigenin and FMLP were added immediately before the start of the measurement of chemiluminescence (O time).

<u>Key</u>:

Đ—Đ , PMNs + Lucigenin + FMLP +SLS
♦→→ , PMNs + Lucigenin -FMLP + SLS





.

### Neutrophil assay

5x10<sup>5</sup> PMNs:

0.1 ml toxin

∴ Relative sensitivity of the haemolytic assay compared to the CL assay.

2.4 x 10<sup>e</sup>

 $------ 256 = 1.28 \times 10^{5}$ 

5 x 10<sup>5</sup>

 $\therefore$  On a cell basis , sheep RBC; are  $1.\,2x10^{\rm s}$  fold more sensitive to SLS than PMNs.

The effect of SLS on PMNs was tested by the chemiluminescence method.

10.9. Possible synergism between M-protein and SLS

Streptococcal survival in the host depends on the M-protein, which protects the organisms from phagocytosis by polymorphonuclear leucocytes (Lancefield , 1962). M-protein, which functions as an antiphagocytic substance, is a potent virulence factor for *S. pyogenes.* and Stollerman It was reported previously (Beachey, 1971) that M-protein attached to bacteria is not leucotoxic.

M-protein, lipoteichoic acid (LTA) and the glycoprotein have all been implicated as ligands in the adherence and colonization processes. However, the possible interactions of these molecules and their roles in mediating adherence and colonization are not clearly understood. More recently Caparon *et al.*, (1991) reported that Mprotein was not the primary streptococcal adhesin, nor was it required -125-

to orient streptococccal adhesin and fibronectin receptor. However, both M-protein and SLS appear to inhibit the same process phagocytosis.

In an attempt to find out if there is any synergistic activity between SLS and M-protein, an assay was developed to examine the effect of M-protein on its own and together with SLS on opsonization of zymosan and uptake of opsonized zymosan by rabbit polymorphonuclear neutrophils.

## (a) <u>Influence of M-protein on opsonization and phagocytosis of</u> zymosan by PMNs

The influence of M-protein on zymosan and phagocytosis of zymosan by PMNs was examined in a similiar fashion to SLS (see Materials and Methods 7.1.1). Fresh rabbit serum (100  $\mu$ l of 1/2 dilution) and 100  $\mu$ l (200  $\mu$ g/ml) or 100  $\mu$ l of two-fold dilution of this concentration of M- protein were mixed and incubated at 37°C for 30 min. Zymosan (100  $\mu$ l) was added, and the tubes were again incubated at 37°C for 30 min. After 30 min, the tubes were centrifuged and tube contents were washed twice with PBS. The washed zymosan was used in the chemiluminesence assay.

Result of this experiment, as expected indicated that Mprotein at concentration of 200  $\mu$ g/ml caused a reduction of phagocytosis of opsonized zymosan by PMNs. This finding also suggested that the decreased zymosan uptake and diminished chemiluminesence were manifestations of the influence of M-protein on the process of phagocytosis. 50% inhibition of the Cl response occurred in between 200  $\mu$ g/ml and 50  $\mu$ g/ml of M-protein. The results presented in Fig. 29 demonstrate that zymosan particles opsonized with normal serum Fig: 29

## Effect of M-protein, and both proteins on opsonization of zymosan by rabbit serum (washed zymosan)

The figure shown is a mean of 3 observations and is representative of four separate experiments.

Key:

a,

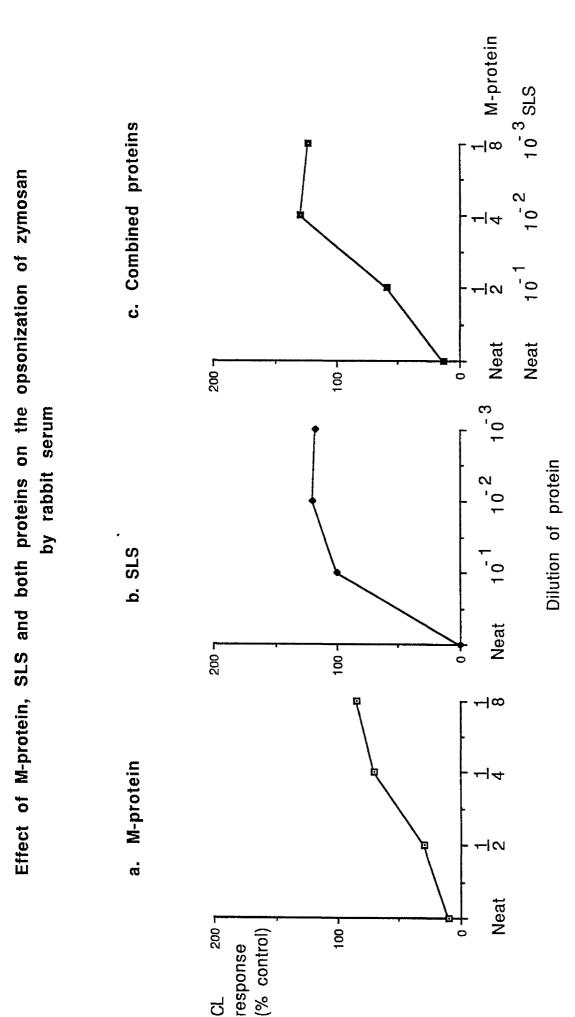
Fresh rabbit serum (100  $\mu$ l of 1/2 plus 100  $\mu$ l of neat and 1/2, 1/4, 1/8, dilution of pepsin extracted M- protein plus 100  $\mu$ l of Zymosan

b.

Fresh rabbit serum (100  $\mu$ l of 1/2 plus 100  $\mu$ l of neat and 1/10, 1/100, 1/1000 dilution of SLS plus 100  $\mu$ l of Zymosan

c.

Fresh rabbit serum (100  $\mu$ l of 1/2 plus 50  $\mu$ l of M protien (200  $\mu$ g /ml) plus 50  $\mu$ l of SLS (256 HU /ml) 50  $\mu$ l of each (two-fold dilutions of M-protein and tenfold dilution of SLS) plus 100  $\mu$ l of 1/2 serum plus 100  $\mu$ l zymosan



-127-

treated with M-protein failed to bind effectively to phagocytic cells, suggesting that C3b was either insufficiently deposited on the zymosan particles or inaccessible to C3b receptors on the phagocytic cell. This finding is not surprising as it is well established that Mprotein exerts its antiphagocytic effect by interfering with the alternative complement pathway (Fischetti, 1991).

(b) <u>Influence of mixture of both M-protein and SLS on opsonization</u> and phagocytosis of zymosan by PMNs

As in the previous experiment (see Result 10.2 and 10.3) it was observed that SLS blocked opsonization of zymosan. The observation that M-protein blocked the opsonization and decreased zymosan uptake raised the possiblility that synergism may exist between M-protein and SLS. In an attempt to find out if there was any synergistic activity between SLS and M-protein, 50 µl of M-protein, (200 µg /ml) + 50 µl of SLS (256 HU /ml) were mixed with 100 µl of 1/2 dilution of fresh serum. Similarly 50 µl of each (two-fold dilutions of M-protein and ten-fold dilution of SLS) + 100 µl of 1/2 serum were mixed and incubated at 37°C for 30 min. Zymosan (100 µl) was added to each tube and incubated for 30 min at 37°C. After 30 min, the tubes were centrifuged and tube contents were washed twice with PBS. The washed zymosan was used in the chemiluminesence assay.

Fig. 29 demonstrates that there was a decreased CL response and decreased phagocytic activity by PMNs suggesting that at the highest concentrations of SLS and M-protein tested, inhibition of CL and uptake of zymosan particles occured (Fig 29). It was was not clear whether this was primarily due to M-protein or SLS. The result (Fig. 29) shows that 100  $\mu$ g M-protein and 25.6HU SLS did not induce any inhibition of uptake of opsonized zymosan, suggesting that there was no synergism between M-protein and SLS. The greater the dilutions of

M-protein 1/4, 1/8, (50, 25  $\mu$ g) and SLS (2.56, 0.256 HU), the greater the CL response was observed. However, there was no evidence of synergism between M-protein and SLS.

### 11. Effect of transferrin on the growth of S. pyogenes Gr A

The ability of S. pyogenes Gr A to obtain iron bound to transferrin (Tf) was assayed by growth kinetics. The kinetics of growth of various strains, isolated from different sites of infection (Table 15), was examined when cultured in either BHIB, THB, and CDM (chelex-treated and chelex-untreated) containing apotransferrin. The Fe content (nmol/ml) of THB, BHIB, NB and CDM was 6.27, 32.22, 59.08 and 0.089 respectively, as measured by an iron binding capacity kit (Sigma), Representative results (see Fig. 30 & 31) show that apotransferrin, at a 10-fold molar excess over Fe, does not inhibit the growth of any of the streptococcal isolates under investigation. All isolates grew luxuriously in iron-restricted transferrin supplemented media, suggesting that they could tolerate the iron-restricted conditions by any of three possible mechanisms. Firstly, production of high affinity chelators (sideropohore-mediated iron acquisition), secondly, a low iron-affinity mechanism or thirdly, the isolates did not display an absolute dependence on iron for growth.

11.1. Effect of EDDA on the growth of S. pyogenes Gr A

The effect of EDDA (Ethylenediamine-di-o-hydroxyphenyl acetic acid), a synthetic chelator of high affinity for  $Fe^{3+}$ , was tested at increasing molar excesses (1, 5, 10, 20) over Fe on the growth of isolates of *S. pyogenes* group A, isolates of *S. milleri* and

RESULTS

### Table 15

Growth\* of streptococci in presence of iron-chelators

| Bacterial strain         | Transferrin | EDDA    | α−α−dipyridyl | Desferal |
|--------------------------|-------------|---------|---------------|----------|
| <u>Gr A streptococci</u> |             | <u></u> |               |          |
| 54359V                   | ÷           | +       | +             | +        |
| 55903M                   | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 60343X                   | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 00657                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 00657                    | +           | +       | , <b>+</b>    | +        |
| 52114                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 52011                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 47061                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 48137                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 05790                    | +           | +       | ÷             | +        |
| 12757                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 12997                    | +           | +       | ÷             | +        |
| 10132                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 05790                    | ÷           | +       | +             | +        |
| 52986                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 52942                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 01594                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 02750                    | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| <u>S. milleri</u>        |             |         |               |          |
| 505                      | ÷           | +       | +             | +        |
| 586                      | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| 591                      | +           | +       | +             | +        |
| <u>E.coli</u> MW         | -           |         | -             | NT       |
| <u>Staph. aureus</u>     | _           |         | -             | NT       |

### NT = Not tested

# Bacteria, in either B. H. I. Broth, C. D. Broth, and T. H. Broth were cultured under anaerobic conditions (Macintosh and Fildes jar) or under aerobic (either static or shaken culture) conditions at 37°C. The effect of chelators were tested at increasing molar excesses (1:1, 5:1, 10:1, 20:1) in over Fe in either B. H. I. Broth, C. D. Broth, and T. H. Broth.

-129-

### Fig. 30.

<u>Growth kinetics of S. pyogenes</u> strain 60343X in B. H. I. Broth in presence of apotransferrin

Bacteria were incubated at 37°C in shaken aerobic condition. Transferrin was added to the medium 12 hr before inoculation.

### Key:

| 88         | control, | no | addition                                 |
|------------|----------|----|------------------------------------------|
| <b>+</b>   | addition | of | 1:1 apotransferrin to Fe                 |
| <b>HH</b>  | addition | of | 2:1 molar excess of transferrin over Fe  |
| <b>}\$</b> | addition | of | 10:1 molar excess of transferrin over Fe |

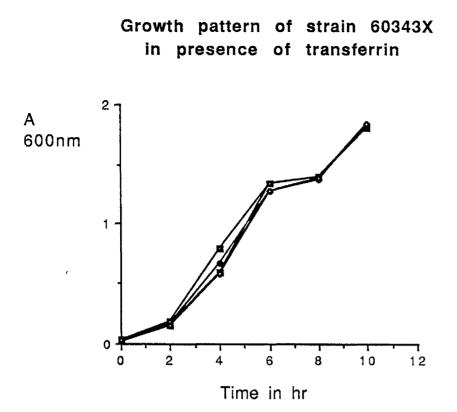
### Fig. 31.

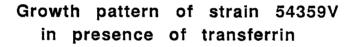
# Growth kinetics of *S. pyogenes* strain 54359V in C.D.M in presence of transferrin

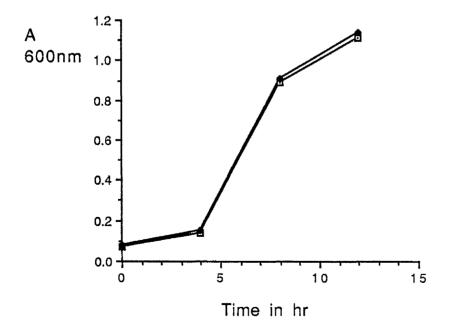
Bacteria were incubated at 37°C in shaken aerobic condition. Transferrin was added to the medium 12 hr before inoculation.

### <u>Key</u>:

G--⊕ control, no addition
 , ←-→ addition of 10:1 molar excess of transferrin over Fe







*E. coli* MW. The cultures, in either BHIB, THB, or CDM were grown under anaerobic conditions (Macintosh & Fields jar) or under aerobic (either static or shaken culture) conditions at 37°C. Growth was measured by withdrawal of samples every 2 h and absorbance measured at 600nm. Repeated experiments (three times) with any of streptococcal isolates shown in Table 15 and Fig. 32 & 33 failed to detect any inhibition of bacterial growth under conditions of iron-restriction . From results presented in Figs. 32 & 33 and Table 15, it was concluded that 17 strains of *S. pyogenes* GrA and 3 strains of *S. milleri* were able to grow unrestrained under iron-limited conditions, with a 20-fold molar-excess of EDDA over Fe as well as in iron-replete media. This finding agrees with the results of Marcelis *et al.*, (1978) who reported that EDDA had no effect on growth of *S. faecalis*. Under similiar conditions of Fe-restriction, both *S. aureus* strain C336 and *E. coli* MW failed to grow.

### 11.2. Effect of a, a-dipyridyl on the growth of S. pyogenes Gr A

The growth kinetics of of *S. pyogenes, E. coli* MW and *Staph. aureus* (see Table 16) in the presence or absence of the synthetic iron chelator,  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl, up to a 20-fold molar excess over Fe was monitored. *S. pyogenes* showed no growth inhibition (Fig. 34) whereas growth of *E. coli* MW (Fig. 35) and *Staph. aureus* was inhibited at a 10 fold molar excess of the chelator (data not shown).

11.3. Effect of desferal (desferrioxamine) on growth 5. pyogenes Gr

A

All isolates of group A streptococci (see Table 15) grew in BHIB, THB, or CDM in the presence of desferrioxamine up to a 20-fold molar excess. It was observed that desferal had no effect on Fig 32 and 33

Growth kinetics of *S. pyogenes* strain 55903M and strain 52948 in the B. H. I. Broth in presence of EDDA

Bacteria were incubated at 37°C in shaken aerobic condition . EDDA was added to the medium 12 hr before inoculation.

Fig. 32. Strain 55903M

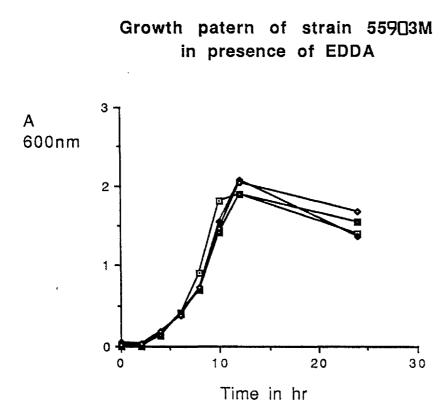
<u>Key</u>:

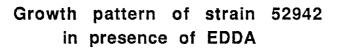
| 00           | control, no addition                          |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>←</b>     | addition of 1:1 EDDA to Fe                    |
| <b>HH</b>    | addition of 2:1 molar excess of EDDA over Fe  |
| <b>\$</b> \$ | addition of 10:1 molar excess of EDDA over Fe |

Fig. 33. Strain 52942

<u>Key</u>:

| 8         | control, | no | addit | tion  |        |    |      |      |    |
|-----------|----------|----|-------|-------|--------|----|------|------|----|
| <b>←</b>  | addition | of | 10: 1 | molar | excess | of | EDDA | over | Fe |
| <b>HH</b> | addition | of | 20: 1 | molar | excess | of | EDDA | over | Fe |





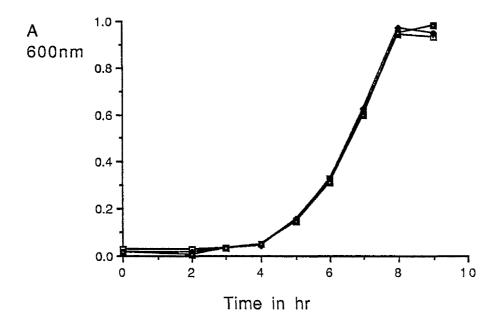


Fig 34 and 35

Growth kinetics of S. pyogenes strain 02750 and E. coli MW in B. H. I. Broth in presence of  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl

Bacteria were incubated at 37°C in shaken aerobic condition.  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl was added to the medium 12 hr before inoculation.

Fig. 34. Strain 02750

Key:

 $\Box$  , control, no addition  $\bullet$  , addition of 10:1 molar excess of  $\alpha, \alpha$ -dipyridyl over Fe

Fig. 35, E. coli MW

<u>Key</u>:

 $\Box = \Xi$ , control, no addition  $\bullet = \bullet$ , addition of 10:1 molar excess of  $\alpha, \alpha$ -dipyridyl over Fe

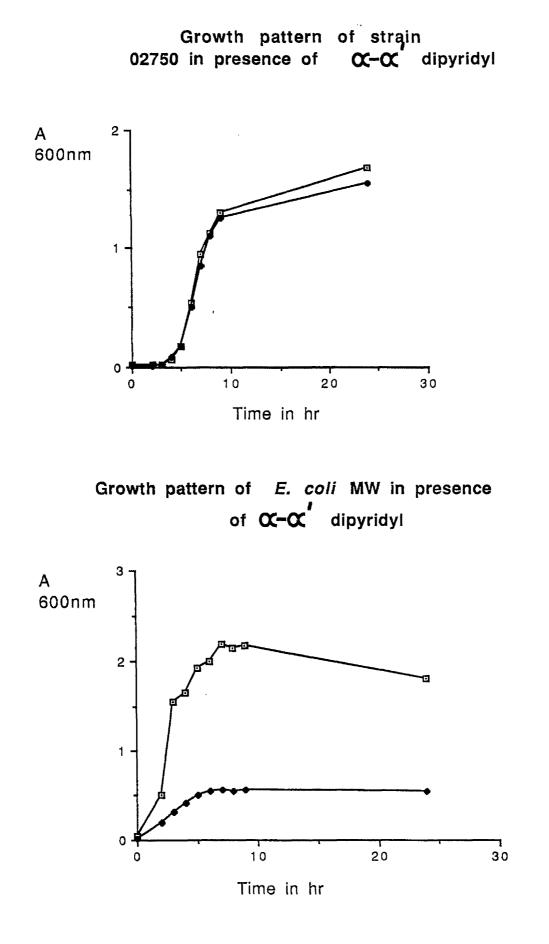


Fig. 36

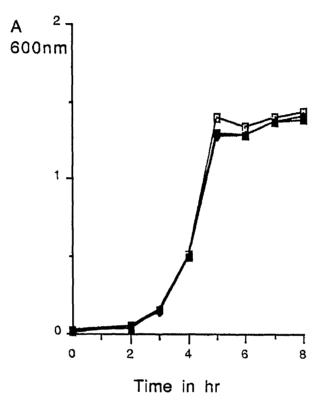
Growth kinetics of S. pyogenes strain 55903M in presence of Desferal

Bacteria were incubated at 37°C in shaken aerobic condition. Desferal was added to the medium 12 hr before inoculation.

<u>Key</u>:

□---Ð , control, no addition
→ , addition of 10:1 molar excess of Desferal over Fe
■--■ , addition of 20:1 molar excess of Desferal over Fe

Growth pattern of strain 55903M in presence of Desferal



multiplication of group A streptococcus strains and suggested ironindependent growth, as shown in representative results for a group A streptococcus strain shown Fig. 36. Desferrioxamine has previously been shown to enhance the growth of *Staph. aureus*, *Yersiniaenterocolitica*, *Klebsiella aerogenes*, *Salmonella typhimurium* but it had no effect on the multiplication of *S. faecalis* (Brock *et al.*, 1983, 1988).

## 11.4. Inhibition of growth by EDDA in the agar plate assay

Fig. 37. a showed the zone of growth inhibition of *E. coli* MW after 18 h at  $37^{\circ}$ C in the presence of various concentrations of EDDA. Similar results have been obtained with a number of strains of *Staph. aureus* (A. Bensoltane, pers. comm.). All strains of *Staph. aureus* were inhibited by 14 mM EDDA. Growth of all strains of *S. pyogenes* was unaffected by concentrations of EDDA up to 44 mM. An example of the pattern of the growth on the plate assay for strain 55903M is shown in Fig. 37. B. These observations corresponded with the findings of Marcelis *et al.*, (1978) where *S. faecalis* was shown to be insensitive to the presence of EDDA up to 44 mM.

### 11.5. Search for siderophores under different growth conditions

To investigate whether or not the insensitivity to the presence of Fe chelators was the result of the production of siderophores by *S. pyogenes* strains, variations in growth conditions were introduced in an attempt to enhance any siderophore production (see Table 16). All strains were grown in either BHIB, THB or CDM under iron-restricted conditions. Inocula obtained from different isolates grown under iron-restricted conditions were washed with normal saline and used as starter for 50 ml cultures either grown

-135-

Fig. 37. Plate assay for inhibition of growth by EDDA

Key:

# (A): Effect of EDDA on the growth of E. coli MW

- $a = 5 \ \mu l \text{ of } 1.5 \ mM \ EDDA$  .
- $b = 5 \ \mu l 4.4 \ mM EDDA$ .
- $c = 5 \ \mu l \ 14 \ mM \ EDDA$ .
- $d = 10 \ \mu l \ 14 \ mM \ EDDA$ .

# (B): Effect of EDDA on the growth of Strep. pyogenes GrA

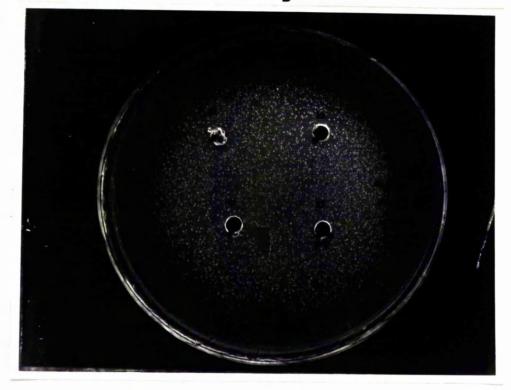
- $a=5~\mu l$  of 1.5 mM EDDA .
- $b = 5 \ \mu l \ 4.4 \ mM \ EDDA$ .
- $c = 5 \ \mu l \ 14 \ mM \ EDDA$ .

.

 $d = 10 \ \mu l \ 44 \ mM \ EDDA$ .



B



-137-

Table 16

Assay for siderophore production in the presence of iron

chelators in B. H. I. B , T. H. B , and C. D. Broth

| Bacterial strain     | Transferrin | EDDA | a-a-dipyridyl | Desferal |
|----------------------|-------------|------|---------------|----------|
| Gr A streptococci    |             |      |               |          |
| 54359V               | -           | -    | -             |          |
| 55903M               | ~           | -    | -             | -        |
| 60343X               | -           | -    | -             | -        |
| 00657                | -           |      | -             |          |
| 00657                |             | -    | -             | -        |
| 52114                |             | -    | -             | -        |
| 52011                | -           | -    |               | -        |
| 47061                | _           | -    | -             | _        |
| 48137                | -           | -    | -             | _        |
| 05790                | _           |      | -             | -        |
| 12757                | -           |      | -             | -        |
| 12997                | -           | -    | -             | _        |
| 10132                | -           | -    |               | -        |
| 05790                | -           | -    | -             | -        |
| 52986                | -           | -    | _             | _        |
| 52942                | -           | -    | -             | -        |
| 01594                | -           | -    | •             | -        |
| 02750                | -           |      | _             | _        |
| <u>S.milleri</u>     |             |      |               |          |
| 505                  | -           |      | -             | -        |
| 586                  | -           | -    | -             | -        |
| 591                  | -           | -    |               | _        |
| <u>E.coli</u> MW     | +           | +    | +             | NT       |
| <u>Staph. aureus</u> | +           | +    | +             | NT       |

NT = Not tested

\* Possible siderophore production by isolates of *S. pyogenes* was investigated. The bacteria were grown under iron-restricted conditions and culture supernates were tested by Arnow and Csaky test (or ferric perchlorate test). under high oxygen tension or low oxygen tension (shaken or static cultures). Samples (2 ml) were removed from a 50 ml flask culture after 4, 8, 12, and 24h of growth at 37°C and were assayed for phenolate or hydroxamate type siderophores by the Arnow assay and Csaky test (or ferric perchlorate test) respectively. When negative results were obtained after 24h growth in iron-restricted media, supernate samples were lyophilised, concentrated 10-fold and retested. Under these conditions phenolate-type siderophores were detected only from *E. coli* MW and *Staph. aureus* C336. There was no evidence of phenolate siderophores in concentrated lyophilized culture supernates of 20 streptococcal isolates. Hydroxamate type siderophores were not detected in supernates of any of the strains tested except *E. coli* MW (see Table 17).

# 16.6. <u>Assay for Phenolate-and Hydroxamate-type siderophores in</u> <u>cultures of Streptococcal isolates grown in three different</u> <u>iron-limiting media</u>

Three different iron-limiting media were used in attempts to induce siderophore production by *S. pyogenes* GrA.

(;) BHI broth with either EDDA, transferrin,  $\alpha - \alpha - \text{dipyridyl}$  or desferal in a 20 fold molar excess were used as culture media. When lyophilised stationary phase culture supernates were tested for the presence of siderophores, all samples from streptococcal isolates gave negative results, whereas that from the culture of *E. coli* MW gave a positive phenolate and hydroxamate type siderophore reaction and *Staph. aureus* C336 gave a positive phenolate type siderophore reaction. (;;) THB with either EDDA, transferrin,  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl and desferal in a 20 fold-molar excess was used as culture medium. None of the

-138-

•

Table 17Detection of Siderophores by different assays

| No of strains<br>used | Arnow<br>assay | Perchlorate<br>assay | Csaky<br>assay | TLC                                           | Blue plate<br>assay |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 5. pyogenes           |                |                      |                | , <u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u> | ануна               |
| 27                    | -              | -                    | -              |                                               | -                   |
| S.milleri             |                |                      |                |                                               |                     |
| 3                     | _              | _                    | -              | -                                             | -                   |
| E.coli MW             | +              | +                    | -              | +                                             | +                   |
| Staph.aureus C33      | 6 +            | -                    | -              | +                                             | +                   |

-140-

streptococcal isolates gave positive reactions for either phenolate or hydroxamate type siderophores when lyophilised stationary phase culture supernates were tested by the Czaky or Arnow assay,

(;;;) CDM (see Appendix 13.1.b) with EDDA, transferrin,  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl or desferal was used as the culture medium. CDM was used either before or after chelex treatment to measure Fe<sup>3+</sup>. All isolates of streptococci gave negative reactions for both phenolate and hydroxamate type siderophore. *E. coli* MW gave positive reactions for both hydroxamate and phenolate siderophores.

11.7. <u>Assay for phenolate-type siderophores by Thin Layer</u> Chromatography

Lyophilised culture supernates for detection of phenolates were extracted with ethyl acetate, as outlined in Materials and Methods. *E. coli* MW and *Staph. aureus* C336 produced one iron-binding compound (see Fig. 38) whereas no evidence was found for phenolate production by any of the streptococcal isolates tested. Iron-binding phenolic compounds form a purple/blue complex with iron and migrate with an R<sub>r</sub> value of approximately 0.5. The control (3, 4dihydroxybenzoic acid) migrated with an R<sub>r</sub> value = 0.5 and extracted material from culture samples from *Staph. aureus* migrated with in R<sub>r</sub> value of approximate 0.55.

## 11.8. Detection of hydroxamate-type siderophores by Thin Layer <u>Chromatography</u> For the detection of hydroxamates from *E. coli* MW,

Staph. aureus and possibly from *S. pyogenes* grown under iron-limiting conditions (see Materials & Methods 7.2.h), culture supernates were concentrated by lyophilisation and separated by thin layer

chromatography using a solvent system of n-butanol-water-acetic acid (60:15:25;v/v). *E. coli* MW produced an iron-binding compound which formed a red /brown complex with iron similar to desferal, which migrated with an  $R_r$  value of approx 0.5. No hydroxamate type siderophores (see Fig.39) were detected in culture supernates from

streptococcal isolates or Staph. aureus (Table 17).

11.9. <u>Assay of siderophores by a universal assay (Blue agar plate</u> assay)

The blue agar plate assay (Schwyn and Neilands, 1987) was used as a screening technique for possible production of siderophores from the isolates of *S. pyogenes*, *S. milleri*, *E. coli* MW and *Staph. aureus*. To remove the iron from the dye, the bacterium must produce the high affinity iron uptake system but only to a level that satisfies its requirements for the metal. This may result in relatively small orange halos around colonies. None of the isolates of group A streptococci nor the three strains of *S. milleri* tested produced any siderophore-like activity (see Fig .40). Streptococcal isolates under investigation were able to grow unimpaired under ironrestricted conditions suggesting an iron-independent metabolism.

12. Effect of Potassium cyanide (KCN) and Sodium azide (NaN<sub>3</sub>) on the growth of S. pyogenes Gr A The effect of KCN and NaN<sub>3</sub> was tested on a number of

isolates of group A streptococci, S. milleri, E. coli MW, and Staph. aureus (Table 18). Generally, KCN, a respiratory inhibitor, binds to and inhibits both the oxidized and reduced forms of cytochrome oxidase of the  $aa_3$ -type (Smith, 1954, Ritchy and Seeley, 1976). Azide ( $N_3^-$ ) acts as a respiratory inhibitor by combining with, and preventing the reduction of oxidized cytochrome oxidases of the

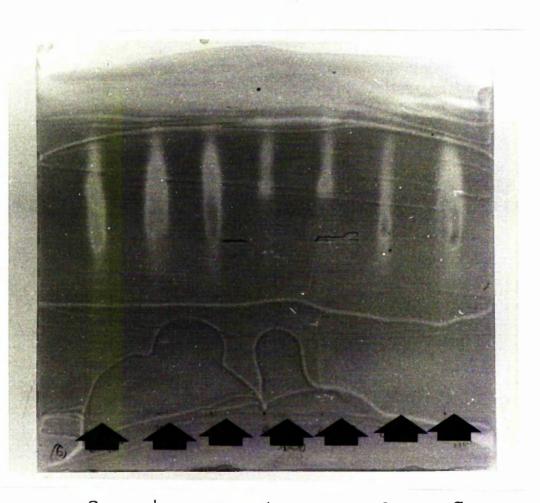
-141-

# Fig. 38

# Assay for phenolate-type siderophores by Thin Layer Chromatography

Key:

- a= Culture supernate of Staph. aureus
- b= Culture supernate of *Staph. aureus* grown in 10:1 molar excess of EDDA
- c= Culture supernate of *Staph. aureus* in grown 20:1 molar excess of EDDA
- d= Culture supernate of 5. pyogenes in 20:1 molar excess of EDDA
- e= Culture supernate of S. pyogenes
- f= Control (3, 4 dihydroxybenzoic acid)
- g= Culture supernate of *E. coli* MW grown in 20:1 molar excess of EDDA



# a b c d e f g

Fig. 39

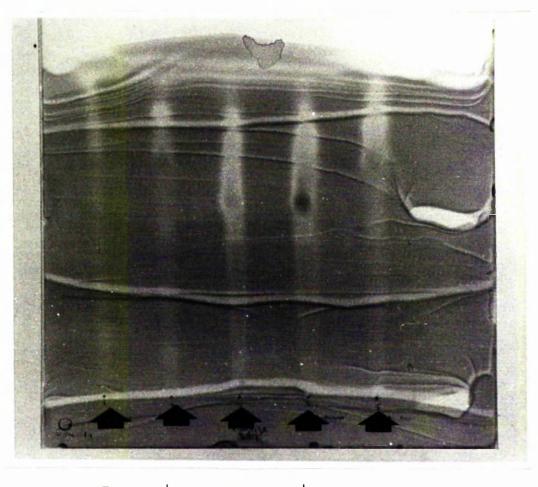
# Assay for hydroxamate-type siderophores by Thin Layer Chromatography

Key:

- a= Culture supernate of S. pyogenes
- b= Culture supernate of *S. pyogenes* grown in 20:1 molar excess of EDDA
- c= Control (Desferal)
- d= Culture supernate of *E. coli* MW grown in 20:1 molar excess of

EDDA

e= Culture supernate of E. coli MW



a b c d e

-144-

Fig 40

# Detection of siderophores by universal assay (Blue agar plate assay)

Strains were point inoculated on the plate and incubated for 24 h at 37° before the plate was inspected for orange halos around the colonies which would indicate siderophore production.

Key:

| <b>a</b> = | 5.  | pyogenes strain       | 55903M |
|------------|-----|-----------------------|--------|
| b=         | ••  |                       | 00657  |
| с=         | ••  | ••                    | 52114  |
| d=         | ••  | ••                    | 54359V |
| e=         | • • | ••                    | 05790  |
| f=         | • • | ••                    | 52942  |
| 8=         | 5.  | <i>milleri</i> strain | 505    |
| h=         | ••  |                       | 586    |
| 1=         | ••  | • •                   | 591    |



Table 18

.

# Growth inhibitory concentration of sodium azide, and potassium cyanide for streptococci and other organisms.

| <u>Species</u> | <u>No. of strains tested</u> | Inhibitory cor | ncentration ( mM) |
|----------------|------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
|                |                              | Sodium azide   | Potassium cyanide |
| S. pyogenes    | 9                            | 100 mM         | 100 mM            |
| 5. milleri     | 3                            | 100 mM         | 100 mM            |
| E.coli MW      | 1                            | 10 mM          | 10 mM             |
| Staph.aureus   | 5 1                          | 10 mM          | 10 mM             |

aa<sub>3</sub>-type. S. pyogenes was resistant to the effect of both these respiratory inhibitors (KCN and NaNa) when added 2h after initiation of growth. The final concentrations of these repiratory inhibitors tested in B.H.I.B were 1 mM, 10 mM, 50 mM, and 100 mM. BHI broth cultures containing either KCN or NaNa were incubated aerobically at 37°C in shaken and unshaken conditions or anerobically. Strains of S. pyogenes showed no inhibition of growth by 50 mM KCN (Fig. 41); however growth inhibition did occur at 100 mM final concentration of KCN and NaN<sub>2</sub> in both aerobic (shaken or unshaken) and anaerobic conditions. In contrast, growth of E. coli MW (see Fig. 42) and Staph. aureus (data not shown) was markedly inhibited at concentrations of 1 mM and 10 mM of KCN and  $NaN_3$  and completely inhibited at a concentration of 50 mM. These results correspond with those reported Whittenbury, (1978), Britton et al., (1978), by . and Archibaldand Fridovich, 1981).

# 12.1. Effect of KCN plus iron chelator EDDA on the growth of <u>5. pyogenes</u>

5. pyogenes was grown under iron-restricted conditions in the presence of 1:1,10:1 and 20:1 EDDA over Fe in B.H.I broth either aerobically (shaken or unshaken) or anaerobically at 37°C. KCN was added after 2h of growth at final concentrations of 1 mM, 10 mM, and 50 mM. EDDA and KCN or NaN<sub>3</sub> had no effect on the growth of *S. pyogenes* (Fig. 4G), even at 50 mM final concentration of either KCN or NaN<sub>3</sub> whereas iron-restriction plus the presence of either respiratory inhibitor had a profound effect on the growth of both *E. coli* MW and *Staph. aureus* (data not shown).

# 12.2. <u>Membrane protein (MP) profile under iron-restricted conditions</u> The membrane protein profile of one clinical isolate (5903M)

-146-

Fig. 41

Effect of KCN in B. H. I. Broth on the growth of 55903M

r

1

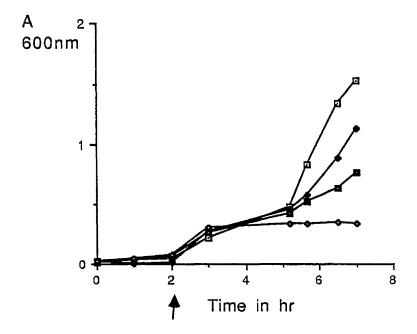
Bacteria were grown aerobically shaken at 37°C. KCN was added (arrow) after two hr of growth.

# <u>Key</u>:

•

| 98        | control, no | addition                      |
|-----------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>+</b>  | addition of | 1 mM KCN after 2 hr growth.   |
| <b>HH</b> | addition of | 10 mM KCN after 2 hr growth   |
| ۹۹        | addition of | 100 mM KCN after 2 hr growth. |

# Growth pattern of strain 55903M in presence of KCN



.

.

.

# F1g.42

Effect of KCN in B.H.I.Broth on the growth of E. coli MW

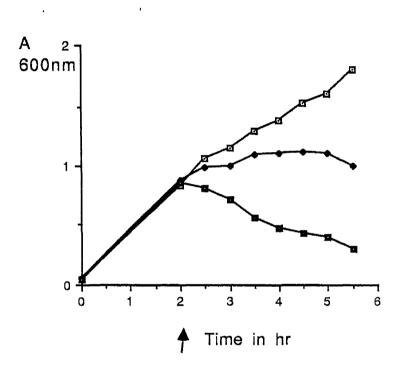
Bacteria were grown aerobically shaken at 37°C. KCN was added (arrow) after two hr of growth.

# <u>Key</u>:

•

B---- , control, no addition
Addition of 1 mM KCN after 2 hr growth.
B---- , addition of 10 mM KCN after 2 hr growth.

# Growth pattern of *E. coli* MW in presence of KCN



-149-

# Fig. 43

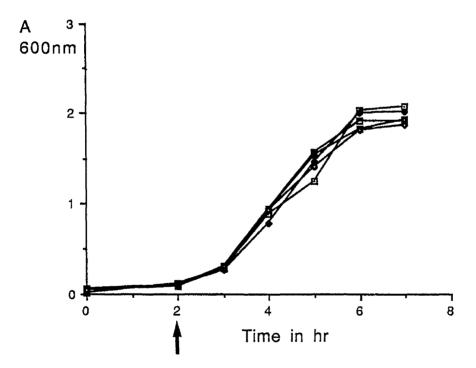
# Effect of KCN + EDDA in B. H. I. Broth on the growth of 55903M

Bacteria were grown under iron-restricted conditions in presence of 10:1 molar excess of EDDA over Fe in aerobic shaken conditions at 37°C. KCN was added after two hr growth.

# <u>Key</u>:

| 88          | control, no addition                                     |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>++</b>   | 10:1 molar excess of EDDA over Fe                        |
| 11          | 10:1 EDDA plus addition of 1 mM KCN after 2 hr growth .  |
| <b>\$\$</b> | 10:1 EDDA plus addition of 10 mM KCN after 2 hr growth . |
| ₩₩          | 10:1 EDDA plus addition of 50 mM KCN after 2 hr growth.  |

Growth of strain 55903M in presence of EDDA and KCN.



.

of *S. pyogenes* (group A) grown aerobically in BHI broth under ironrestricted conditions imposed by EDDA is shown in Fig44. Comparison of the band patterns in lanes B and C indicated that there was no differences in the protein profile between cells grown under ironreplete (lane B) and iron-restricted conditions (lane C) as visualized by silver staining. Fig. 44

# Membrane protein (MP) profile under iron-restricted conditions

A= SDS-7 mol.wt. standard

B= Strain 55903M grown under iron-replete conditions

1

C= Strain 55903M grown under iron-restricted conditions



Discussion

(

.

### 13. Production (induction and release), purification and

#### characterisation of SLS

Two strains of *S. pyogenes* group A, strain C203S and strain 55093M were examined for streptolysin S (SLS) production. Strain C203S was originally selected because of its ability to produce large quantities of SLS from resting cells (Bernheimer, 1949; Arbuthnott and Symington, 1973; Ginsburg, 1970; Hryniewicz and Pryjma 1977; Alouf and Loridan, 1986). The procedure for induction and release of SLS is not only simple, but economical and reproducible, yielding appreciable quantities of SLS at 1000 HU/ml.

A single batch of washed streptococci was shown to produce, upon 14 induction cycles, the same total haemolytic activity of SLS after each induction. In the past, Weld (1934), Bernheimer (1949), Ginsburg *et al.*, (1963, 1965), Alouf and Lorridan (1986) all have shown that a single batch of cells could be induced 4 times (Alouf and Lorridan 1986) for the production of high amounts of SLS, provided that optimal amounts of RNA-core (albumin or Tween), an energy source and Mg<sup>+</sup> ions were present. On the other hand, Lai *et al.*, (1978), and Akao *et al.*, (1983) induced the release of SLS from washed cells with RNA-core for 90 min and were able to obtain haemolytic material after one induction but none on further induction.

In the present study, the interaction of washed streptococci, prepared under specified conditions with RNA-core and a fermentable carbohydrate (maltose) and  $PO_4^{-2}$  in the presence of Mg<sup>++</sup> resulted in an appearance of haemolytic activity identified as SLS. This finding is in accordance with the earlier reports of Weld (1934), Bernheimer (1949), Ginsburg *et al.*, (1963, 1965) and Alouf and Lorridan (1986). It is interesting to note that both Bernheimer (1949) and Okamoto (1962) showed that in addition to RNA-core active fraction (AF), an energy source (maltose, glucosamine), K<sup>+</sup> and  $PO_4^{-2}$  were essential for maximal haemolysin formation by resting streptococci. Okamoto (1964) also demonstrated that the inhibitory effect of glucose on SLS formation by growing streptococci might be due to the glucose effect in enzyme synthesis, and not the killing effect of low pH. According to Bernheimer (1949) there was a direct relationship between SLS yield and the quantity of glucosamine fermented. His findings indicated that the cocci were actively metabolizing when SLS appeared in the medium and that this process was energy-dependent.

-153-

The induction of the same cell suspension for 14 cycles showed that, under appropriate conditions, washed cocci were capable of forming appreciable quantities of SLS and that the system studied can be utilized for preparation of crude toxin of high potency and large yield. A possible explanation of the cyclic release of toxin may be that each induction cycle causes autolysis of a fraction of the bacterial cells, and that SLS is released from an intracellular pool by this process. That the presence of SLS in the induction buffer does not depend upon autolysis is indicated by several facts. First, there is no decrease in optical density of the bacterial suspension while SLS is formed. Second, SLS develops as a specific response to very low concentrations of RNA-core. Third, when induction buffer was used without RNA-core, there was no release of haemolytic material (SLS).

Although it is clear that SLS does not have its origin in autolysis, the actual mechanism by which toxin arises is not clear (Bernheimer, 1949). The neccessity for an energy source, the effect of

IV

temperature on the formation of SLS, and the inhibition of toxin formation by a variety of enzymes demonstrates that SLS is formed only during active metabolism.

It has already been pointed out by Bernheimer (1949) that appearance of SLS depends upon the rate of synthesis. In agreement with this is the observation that only traces of SLS can be found in sonically-disrupted cocci, and this fact has already disproved conclusively the extraction hypothesis. It seems likely that SLS is synthesized in the resting cells, and that the rate of appearance of SLS is limited by an energy-yielding or other metabolic processes in such resting cells. The most highly purified fraction of SLS (fraction 19) had a specific haemolytic activity  $3.5 \times 10^{5}$  HU (mg protein)<sup>-1</sup>, a value similiar to that reported by Lai *et al.*, (1978) and Alouf and Loridan (1986).

The data presented here suggest that SLS is synthesised *denovo* during each induction cycle and that inhibitors of protein synthesis such as chloramphenicol block its formation. An alternative, but more complex interpretation might involve synthesis of a protein (possibly catalytic) which promotes release of presynthesised SLS. The two possible interpretations were not differentiated by this experimental approach. According to Akao *et al.*, (1983) the production of SLS by streptococci was inhibited by treatment with the protease inhibitor, tosylphenylalanine chloromethyl ketone (TPCK), even in the presence of the inducer oligonucleotides. Other protease inhibitors, antipain, leupeptin, or pepstatin had little or no effect. Trypsin reversed the effect of TPCK or TLCK. The reversal was dependent upon the amount of added trypsin and the incubation time at 37°C suggesting

VI

that a protease activity was involved in haemolysin formation. The effect of trypsin was not observed if chloramphenicol was also added, suggesting that a precursor of SLS was processed as it was synthesized and released into medium as the active haemolysin, by the concerted action of a protease and inducer oligonucleotides.

~155-

Chloramphenicol blocked protein synthesis of "cells A" while "cells B" (used as control) not exposed to antibiotic were not affected and yielded the same haemolytic titre after each induction (1000 HU/ml). As the activity of such haemolytic material was inhibited by trypan blue but not by cholesterol, it was considered to be due to SLS.

Estimated molecular weights of less than 4,000 have been 1964 reported for SLS (Hryniewicz and Prylma 1978, Koyama, and Egammand Lai *et al.*, 1978) but clear and direct supporting evidence has not been published. However, Alouf and Loridan (1986) for the first time presented data concerning the analysis of SLS on SDS and native-PAGE. According to their findings, a band which they identified as SLS migrated with the dye front in SDS and native PAGE, although the gel profile of the RNAcore carrier molecule was not reported. From these results the molecular weight of SLS was estimated to be below 4000.

The data presented in this thesis suggest that the purified hydroxylapatite column product contained the low molecular weight peptide which always ran at the dye front of the gel as visualized through silver staining whereas the appearance of 5-8 higher molecular weight bands were indicative of the presence of the carrier molecule yeast RNA-Core. There was no discernible difference in the low molecular weight region of the gel between profiles of carrier alone

and carrier with SLS bound. Almost the same pattern of bands was observed and it was difficult to determine the possible molecular weight of SLS from such gels. When crude and purified SLS was analyzed by native-PAGE with RNA-core as a control, it was observed that the RNA-core profile lacked one band as compared to the SLS gel profile. This band was suspected of being SLS but one cannot estimate the molecular weight by this method.

-156-

Since the molecular weight and identity of the SLS peptide was not clear from the SDS and native PAGE analysis, a zymogram technique was used to locate SLS by its haemolytic activity on native-PAGE. Comparison of the pattern of haemolysis with that of the stained bands after silver staining showed that the haemolytic activity resided in a component not at the dye front but at a position expected of a small peptide. Three fractions were assayed by this method and fraction 19 produced a relatively larger haemolytic zone than fractions 18 and 20 as expected from the haemolytic assay of these fractions.

Hryniewicz and Pryjma (1978) and Alouf and Loridan (1986) claimed to have observed the haemolytic activity of SLS on gels by overlays containing sheep RBCs, but no data were published in their reports. The zymogram technique demonstrated clearly that SLS is haemolytically active in the absence of carrier, a finding which contradicts earlier claim that SLS was inactive in a carrier free state (Lai *et al.*, 1978).

Proteins are usually fragile molecules that often require great care during purification to ensure that they remain intact and fully active. Removal of proteins from the cellular environment

subjects them to a variety of conditions and processes that can lead to loss of activity or alteration of structure. These include dilution, change in solution conditions, exposure to degradative enzymes, oxygen, heavy metals, and surfaces and changes in physical conditions (e.g. freezing and thawing). SLS is normally assayed by its haemolytic activity and this property is remarkably labile.

Poor stability of SLS activity has been the subject of comment by previous investigators. According to Ginsburg (1970), haemolysin complexed with serum albumin, detergent or RNA-core are very unstable in aqueous solutions and they lose most of their activity on standing at 25°C for a few hours. According to Koyama and Egami (196%), in the purified state, the haemolytic activity rapidly decreased even at ice-cold temperature and at neutral pH and only 10 per cent of original activity remained after overnight standing. However, in partially purified preparations, the haemolytic activity could be conserved by lyophilization without any appreciable inactivation. Lai *et al.*, (1978), Bernheimer, (1983), and Alouf and Loridan, (1986) reported that SLS was unusually labile and its instability through manipulative steps was probably due to its hydrophobicity.

The result presented here showed that SLS lost almost all haemolytic activity if kept in 37°C, 4°C, or -20°C, with or without glycerol for 12 h. However SLS retained 100% haemolytic activity for more than six months if stored in the presence of 0.1% extraneous protein (bovine serum albumin) plus 20% glycerol at -20°C. If one is primarily interested in studying enzyme activity, the presence of serum albumin may not matter. In contrast the presence of extraneous

protein is undesirable in structural studies. The presence of 20% glycerol may also be undesirable. Although it can be removed by dialysis, it is likely that biological activity would be lost during this process. The role of serum albumin in stabilising the activity of SLS is not known.

Attempts to electro-transfer SLS from PAGE gels onto nitrocellulose or Hybond C membranes for further characterization by amino acid sequencing and animal inoculation for immunogenicity studies were unsuccessful. Likewise, attempts to remove SLS after excision of gel bands followed by electroelution resulted in no recovery of activity. Purified SLS, in its native state was run on non-denaturing PAGE. SLS proved difficult to visualize by Ponceau S and Coomassie-blue staining, possibly because of the relatively low amounts of protein and its high specific activity. This observation suggested that Ponceau S staining was not sensitive enough to detect SLS or that SLS failed to bind to the membranes during transfer . Further efforts directed towards conclusively identifying the SLS peptide on gels and effecting its extraction or transfer to nitrocellulose would be very worthwhile, since this could facilitate the sequencing of the peptide, which would provide the key to further studies on this elusive toxin. In similiar studies with a small hydrophobic peptide,  $\delta$ -lysin, produced by *S. aureus*, the sequence of this poorly antigenic peptide allowed its chemical synthesis , and a series of  $\delta$  lysin analogues were studied extensively in relation to their haemolytic activity and possible modes of interaction with membrane lipids (Alouf 1986)

#### 13.1. The growth of S. pyogenes in the presence of chelators

The growth response of S. pyogenes and S. milleri to Fedeprivation was compared to that of E. coli MW and S. aureus, both of which contain several well-documented high-affinity Fe acquisition systems (Neilands, 1981). All the streptococcal strains examined in this study were able to grow and multiply in media (BHIB, CDM and THB) containing powerful ferric iron chelators such as EDDA, transferrin,  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl and desferal. A large molar excess of any of these chelators (over Fe) in the growth medium had no significant effect on the streptococcal growth rate or final cell density, and the absence of siderophore-mediated iron acquisition systems indicate either extraordinarily efficient Fe acquisition or a very low or zero Fe requirement. Our findings coincide with the findings of Neilands (1974) who indicated that iron is not esential for lactic acid bacteria. Marcels et al., (1978) could not detect significant differences in the growth of S. faecalis in the presence or absence of avaible iron. Archibald (1983) explicity stated that Lactobacillusplantarum is an organism not requiring iron and his experiments regarding Graphite furnace atomic absorption analysis revealed that washed Lactobacillus plantarum cells contained less than 0.1 µM intracellular Fe while E. coli B cells contained 900µM. Verstraete et al., (1989) also reported that lactic acid bacteria (using species of different genera such as Lactobacillus, Streptococcus, Pediococcus and Leuconostoc) were able to compete and grow in the absence of available iron and copper.

Brock and Janet (1983) and Brock *et al.*, (1988) reported that an excess of iron markedly increased the rate of multiplication of both Staph. aureus, and Y. enterocolitica, but had no effect on the multiplication of S. faecalis. These observations were similiar to earlier studies showing that growth of many microorganisms, but not streptococci, is inhibited by serum or transferrin and that this inhibition is reversible by iron (Schade, 1963, Weinberg, 1978, and Marcelis *et al.*, 1978). The fact that desferrioxamine (desferal) had no effect on multiplication of *Strep. faecalis* supports our findings for Fe-independent growth of *S. pyogenes* and *S. milleri*, since if desferrioxamine were acting in some other way not related to iron chelation, it might have been expected to enhance the growth of all streptococcal strains.

In contrast to these reports, Francis et al., (1985) reported "in the case of S. pyogenes, it seems unclear whether or not it even uses hemproteins for aerobic respiration. Although hemin has been observed to be necessary for the aerobic existence of streptococci such as S. faecalis and S. sanguis (Whittenbury, 1978), S. pyogenes was reported in one study to lack hemin induced NADH oxidase, thereby suggesting a lack of a cytochrome system (Ritchey and Seelley, 1976). However, that same study indicated S. sanguis to be devoid of NADH oxidation. If the studies of S. sanguis are accurate, it appears that although this bacterial species does not require a cytochrome system for aerobic respiration, it still requires hemin for growth (probably to synthesize a catalase-like protein for protection against  $H_2O_2$ formation). Although Ritchey and Seeley (1976) reported S. pyogenes to either facilitate NADH oxidation using flavin-like proteins or to lack the oxidation capacity altogether (depending on the strain), they did not indicate whether or not S. pyogenes required hemin for peroxidase

activity. Since it was observed that *S. pyogenes* (strain unknown) required Hb for growth, it is likely that this species needs intact hemin for at least the formation of a catalase [since all streptococci are believed to be incapable of synthesizing protoporphyrin IX].

-161-

Francis et al., (1985) proposed that if *S. pyogenes* required haemin for growth (as with other streptococci) (Ritchey and Seelley, 1976), it might secrete a high haem. affinity protein such as haemopexin which would be bound by a membrane receptor when carrying haem. The haema could then be transferred into the cell interior.

The experiments reported in this thesis on growth in the presence of chelators and the search for siderophores support the  $\binom{(978)}{conclusion}$  of Marcelis et al., (Archibald (1983) and Verstraete etal., (1989) that S. pyogenes and S. milleri can grow in the absence of Fe. No evidence was obtained to support the conclusion of Francis etal., (1985) that S. pyogenes required haemin, nor that of Griffths and McClain (1989) that Fe stimulated growth of S. pyogenes and that iron limitation induced a higher yield of SLS.

Nutrient limitation is known to have a profound effect on the composition and surface structure of bacteria (Williams and Brown, 1966) as well as on gene regulation. Present investigations suggested that there was no minor or major differences in the SDS-PAGE profiles of membranes from cells grown under iron-replete and iron-restricted conditions. This study confirms that iron does not alter the membrane protein profile of *S. pyogenes* group A and had no impact on bacterial growth.

#### 13.2. Absence of siderophore productions

The data presented indicate that 5. pyogenes and 5. milleri

do not excrete a readily detectable, classic phenolate or hydroxamate siderophpore. On other hand *E. coli* MW produced both phenolate and hydroxamate-type of siderophore whereas *Staph. aureus* produced only a phenolate-type of siderophore as detected by TLC. Our findings coincide with the observation of Evans *et al.*, (1986) and Francis *etal.*, (1985), that *S. mutants* and *S. pyogenes* did not produce ferric chelating and transporting siderophores respectively. These data confirmed that a high affinity siderophore-mediated iron acqusition system was not involved. Evans *et al.*, (1986) proposed a model for reductive assimilation of iron by *S. mutans* and demonstrated the effect of an environmental reductant (sodium ascorbate) on iron uptake, as well as possible chelation and withholding of iron by certain ferric or ferrous chelators.

#### 13.3. <u>Effect of potassium cyanide (KCN) and sodium azide (NaN<sub>a</sub>) on</u> <u>the growth of S. pyogenes Gr A</u> The effect of KCN and NaN<sub>a</sub> was tested on a number of

isolates of group A streptococci, *S. milleri, E. coli* MW, and *Staph. aureus.* Generally, KCN, a respiratory inhibitor, binds to and inhibits both the oxidized and reduced forms of cytochrome oxidase of the  $aa_3$ -type (Smith, 1954, Ritchy *et al.*, 1976). Azide ( $N_3^-$ ) acts as a respiratory inhibitor by combining with, and preventing the reduction of oxidized cytochrome oxidases of the  $aa_3$ -type. The data presented show that *S. pyogenes* was resistant to the effect of both these respiratory inhibitors (KCN and NaN<sub>3</sub>) when added 2 h after initiation of growth. Strains of *S. pyogenes* showed no inhibition of growth by 50 mM KCN ; however growth inhibition did occur at 100 mM final concentration of KCN and NaN<sub>3</sub> in both aerobic (shaken or unshaken) and anaerobic conditions. This probably reflects a non-specific effect

DISCUSSION

unrelated to cyt A/A<sub>2</sub>. Hence it is not surprising that the streptococci, which are generally catalase negative and lacking in cytochromes, are amongst the most resistant organisms. Streptococci and other lactic bacteria are conventionally considered to be facultative anaerobes with a preference for anaerobic conditions but it was observed that both S. pyogenes and S. milleri grew very well in both aerobic and anaerobic culture. They are unique amongst bacteria able to grow aerobically in that they are not able to synthesize porphyrins - and therefore cytochromes and catalase - and are not, apparently, capable of forming ATP via the electron transport chain. Aerobically they are presumed to carry out substrate level ATP synthesis via the fermentation mechanisms they use when growing anaerobically (Whittenbury, 1978). The univalent reduction of oxygen to the superoxide radical is a commonplace event in biological systems, and the superoxide dismutases (SODs), which catalytically scavenge this radical, appear to function as a primary defence against its potential cytotoxicity (Britton et al., 1978). There appear to be manganese enzymes and iron enzymes in both gram-positive and gramnegative bacteria. According to Britton et al., (1978) S. pyogenes gr A, and S. faecalis lack an FeSOD but contain only MnSOD. This observation supports our finding that S. pyogenes gr A might not require iron and lacks a cytochrome system. In contrast, growth of E. coli MW and Staph. aureus was markedly inhibited at a concentration of 1 mM and 10 mM of KCN and NaN<sub>3</sub> and completely inhibited at a concentration of 50 mM. These results correspond with those reported by

and Fridovich, (1981).

## 13.4. Effect of KCN or NaN<sub>3</sub> plus iron chelator EDDA on the growth of <u>5. pyogenes</u>

S. pyogenes grew profusely in the presence of high concentration of Fe chelators such as EDDA, Desferal,  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$ -dipyridyl in an aerobic environment. In order to show that such growth was independent of both Fe and  $O_2$  as a terminal electron acceptor, KCN and NaN<sub>2</sub> were added to the growth medium at levels which completely inhibited growth of aerobic bacteria. These agents have no effect on the growth of *S. pyogenes* at concentration below 100 mM, proving the the growth was independent of cyt  $aa_3$  oxidoreductase and  $O_2$ .

#### 13.5. Iron and SLS production in 5. pyogenes Gr A

Griffths and McClain (1988) reported that Fe-limitation stimulated SLS production in *S. pyogenes.* Reports of toxin synthesis being derepressed by Fe have been made for diphtheria toxin in *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*; also Fe is known to affect the levels of Shiga toxin production in *Shigella dysenteriae*. All the data on growth and SLS production in *C203S* suggest that SLS is not regulated by iron and nor there any evidence for a dependence of SLS production on iron. Addition of EDDA at a 20 fold molar excess over Fe in BHI-BM did not restrict the growth of C203S and the level of haemolysin (SLS) production was not affected. This finding is in contrast with those of Griffths and McClain (1988), who claimed that growth of *S. pyogenes* was stimulated by iron and that low iron-concentration (1.2 $\mu$ g/ml) in medium was conducive to high haemolysin production, while an increase of iron upto 5.0 $\mu$ g /ml offered no correlation. 13.6. The influence of purified SLS on the chemiluminescence response of rabbit peritoneal neutrophils to FMLP

Various strategies have evolved in microorganisms and their products to interfere with phagocytic functions (Mims, 1982). The most straightforward antiphagocytic action is to kill the phagocytic cells. Another mechanism is the inhibition of chemotaxis or the mobilization of phagocytic cells. A number of cytolytic toxins elicit, at lytic doses, the disruption of cytoplasmic membrane and that surrounding the intracellular organelles of phagocytic cells, thereby provoking the explosion of vesicles containing autolytic enzymes (Arbuthnott, 1982).

Earlier investigators have demonstrated that most group A streptococci possess cell-bound haemolysin (CBH), in the form of SLS which is capable of haemolysing red blood cells and causing cytopathic changes in mouse peritoneal leucocytes (Elias *et al.*, 1966, Hryniewicz and Pryjma 1977). According to Ofek $\angle$ (1970), the haemolytic and leukotoxic activity of streptococci is abolished by the neutralization of CBH activity with trypan blue. Leukocytes that engulfed streptococci (40% phagocytosis) lacking CBH activity (heat killed or trypan blue treated) did not undergo cytopathic changes. On the other hand, under similiar conditions 100% of the leukocytes died following exposure to CBH-containing streptococci.

Chemiluminescence is an indirect measure of the activity of bacterial toxins on phagocytes. M=Call *et al.*, (1979) reported that the responses induced by FMLP in neutrophils are similiar to those induced during an acute bacterial infection. SLS inhibited the chemiluminescence reponse of peritoneal neutrophils in response to the pro-inflammatory mediator FMLP. This is the first report of the effect

-165-

of purified SLS on neutrophil response to pro-inflammatory mediators. The results suggest that SLS inhibited the CL response in a dosedependent manner. However, it proved difficult to count the dead / live neutrophils in response to FMLP because of a pronounced cell aggregation response and shape change, although one could count the dead and live cells without FMLP.

Little is known about the exact mechanism by which this toxin kills the neutrophils. The lytic effects of SLS are thought to be due to its direct disruptive actions on cell membranes, and the crucial role of membrane phospholipid as the binding site and probably the target of SLS has been suggested in a variety of experiments (Elias *et al*, 1966, Bernheimer, 1972).

Although cell death by lysis can be induced by sufficiently high doses of toxin, there may be significant changes in cell function with sublytic concentrations of toxin. Alouf (1986) stated that "At sublytic doses, certain cytolytic toxins impair the chemotactic response of phagocytes which may be of significance in the pathogenesis of bacterial infections". This impairment was reported to be due to "moderate modification" of the phagocyte membrane. In most cases, the membrane modification of the oxidative metabolism of neutrophils is activated and results in an intense burst of chemiluminescence as shown, for example, in the case of treatment of PMNs with SLO (Anderson and Duncan, 1980) or with *E. coli* haemolysin (Cavalieri, *et al.*, 1984). The chemotactic response of macrophages was not investigated here but would be of interest in future studies.

#### 13.7. Effect of SLS on opsonophagocytosis

The effects of SLS on the complement system and opsonization

-166-

have been largely unexplored. Complement proteins interact in a precise sequence of reactions leading to the production of biologically active cleavage fragments capable of interacting with microorganisms promoting opsonization on the one hand, and cell damage on the other. An important consideration is the relevance of the *in vitro* effects to what happens *in vivo*.

-167-

This is the first report where the effect of SLS on opsonization of zymosan has been examined. The result, blockage of opsonization and decreased uptake of opsonized zymosan, was unpredicted. It was interesting to find both washed and unwashed opsonized zymosan particles behaving in a similiar fashion suggesting that washing had little effect in removing SLS from the SLS+serum +zymosan complex. Furthermore, no haemolytic activity was observed when supernates of these washings were examined. Blockage of opsonization of zymosan could be explained in the following ways :

(;) Phagocytosis occurred more slowly in heat-inactivated (no complement activity) than in MgEGTA-chelated samples (alternate pathway only remaining active) suggesting that, although MgEGTA blocked the classical pathway, it did not completely block the opsonisation of zymosan. Thus opsonization was due partly to the classical and partly to the alternate pathway. Although it was not directly proved that SLS could inactivate both classical and alternate pathways, it is assumed that SLS may have an inhibitory effect on a step common to both pathways. More extensive work in this area will be worthwhile.

(;;) More evidence of inhibition of opsonization and resistance to phagocytosis came from the effects of SLS on bound opsonin (serum),

VI

where zymosan particles were preopsonized with serum and then exposed to SLS. After washing the complex, zymosan particles behaved in a similiar fashion to serum + SLS + zymosan complex (;.e., decreased uptake of zymosan by phagocytes). This suggested that SLS may cause C3b to detach from zymosan particles, or that SLS inactivated the C3b deposited on the zymosan surface, for example by binding to C3b to block the receptor site recognized by PMNs. Alternatively, SLS may bind to C3b or other complement proteins which may act as carriers subsequently releasing SLS to kill PMNs. It is well established that haemolytic activity can be transferred from one chemically unrelated carrier (inducer) to another (Duncan<sub>and Masson</sub>1976). These inducers are serum albumin, RNA, ribonuclease-resistant core RNA, trypan blue,  $\alpha$ lipoprotein and some non-ionic detergents such as Tween 40, 60, 80, and triton X-205 (Wannakmer, 1983).

The finding regarding interaction with serum and opsonophagocytosis clearly suggests that SLS needs serum in order to bind to zymosan. Once bound to zymosan (serum-treated), SLS does not elute from the zymosan on washing. PMNs see opsonized zymosan treated with SLS like unopsonized zymosan. PMNs appear to be either unresponsive because they are dead or because they are paralysed in terms of their CL response to opsonized zymosan.

#### 13.8. Possible synergism between M-protein and SLS

Group A streptococci can persist in tissues for weeks, primarily because of the M-protein on their outer surface (Fischetti, 1991). Studies by Phillips *et al.*, (1981) indicated that purified Mprotein released from the streptococcal cell wall with phage lysin was similiar to the size of the native cell-wall-bound M-molecule. M-

proteins extracted with pepsin are almost half the size of the lysinextracted molecule and are likely to be the enzymically cleaved products derived from the native M-molecule. The M-protein used in this study was purified pepsin-extracted fragment of type 24 streptococci. The data presented in this thesis did not show synergism between SLS and M-protein and it proved difficult to assess the influence of the mixture of M-protein and SLS on serum components and on opsonization.

# 13.9. Brief evaluation of the role of SLS in the pathogenicity of group A streptococci

This thesis presents details of study on the possible roles of iron and SLS in pathogenicity of group A streptococci which may help in the understanding of the disease process in infections caused by these organisms. The multiplicity of factors and their contributions to the pathogenicity of the organisms are summarized in Fig. 4. Such a comprehensive armoury endows the organism with great powers of adaptability.

The present study clearly shows that this potential pathogen can proliferate in vitro under iron-depleted conditions and has no need for iron or production of siderophores. It seems that S. pyogenes group A lacks Fe-containing enzymes and probably the Fe is replaced by Mn in case of SOD as reported by Briton *et al.*, (1978). Other metals may act as prosthetic groups in essential metalloenzymes but this aspect of streptococcal metabolism warrants further study. Studies of Francis *et al.*, (1985) found no requirement or transport system for Fe in S. pyogenes group A. Hence, these pathogenic bacteria may establish infections in mammalian hosts irrespective of level s of free iron,

-169-

which is known to be a limiting factor in the virulence of the pathogenic bacteria. Also, the ability to thrive either in oxygen rich or oxygen free conditions adds further to the versatility of this organism.

-170-

Although considerable work has been done on iron and its acquisition by invading bacteria, little is known about the requirement and acquisition of other metals by bacteria. It is well accepted that iron plays an essential role in some microbial enzymes, yet insufficient data is available on the role of other metals. The findings of this thesis regarding *S. pyogenes* draw attention to the need to study the role of other metals in microbes where iron is either replaced by other metals or is not an absolute requirement.

SLS is apparently not immunogenic. This property may result from its action on lymphocytes, from the small size of the active polypeptide moiety or its affinity for phospholipids of cell membranes. It may bind rapidly to cells and not be available to stimulate immune response. So, the lack of immunogenicity may enable its free circulation attached to carrier serum proteins and thus cause disturbance of cells even in remote organs because of the apparent ease with which non-specific carriers can exchange SLS. Since no neutralizing antibody is found after immunisation or in convalescent sera, the effect of toxin may be unimpaired even after repeated streptococcal infections ; such a sequence may occur in the pathogenesis of rheumatic fever.

In this thesis a detailed analysis of SLS on both SDS and native-PAGE was done and SLS was localized on a zymogram. This will facilitate excision of the relevant protein band, which can then be used for immunogenic studies by injecting the emulsified gel band with a suitable carrier either adsorbed or the toxin covalently linked as a hapten. It is interesting to note that staphylococcal delta lysin, a small lytic peptide, is more-immunogenic when toxoided than when in the native form. Further studies on immunogenicity and the structure of SLS would aid the understanding of the relationship between SLS and various unrelated carriers. Also, further studies on the interaction of SLS with serum and in opsonophagocytosis will further help in understanding of the complexity and role of SLS in streptococcal pathogenicity.

Only *in vitro* studies were carried out in this thesis and the role of SLS in infections is difficult to assess without good animal models. Two major trends on experimental streptococcal infections are evident in the literature.

1) studies of the dynamics of infection in laboratory animals 2) studies devoted to the elucidation of the pathogenic mechanisms that lead to the development of tissue damage. This is principally in relation to the pathogenesis of post-streptococcal sequelae in humans. The significance of SLS production by groups A, C, and G streptococci in the pathogenesis of streptococcal disease is not understood. Streptococcal strains, the virulence of which has been increased by passage in animals, did not produce greater amounts of haemolysins. In fact, decreased production of SLS has been reported (Leedom and Barkulis, 1959). The toxic manifestations in mice injected with serum haemolysin have been studied by Weld (1934). Animals surviving for 90 min after injection developed haematuria, and their livers and spleens became enlarged. Rabbits injected i.v. with sublethal doses of RNA-

VI

haemolysin experienced mild proliferative glomerulonephritis. Rabbits injected i.v. with lethal doses of RNA-haemolysin (approximately 6,000 haemolytic units/kg body weight) died within 45-60 min with severe intravascular haemolysis. SLS injected into the knee joint of rabbits regularly elicited chronic arthritis (Cook and Fincham, 1966). Thus modern studies of the *in vivo* effects of streptococci are lacking. However, it has been reported (Duncan, 1983) that SLS is produced during *in vivo* (mice) growth of the streptococci, and it will be worthwhile to study the role of SLS in pathogenesis by using SLS<sup>-</sup>and SLS<sup>+</sup> strains.

Naturally occurring SLS<sup>-</sup> strains of S. pyogenes are seldom seen, therefore, SLS is generally considered a conserved trait. The incidence of SLS<sup>-</sup> strains in clinical specimens is unknown because SLS is primarily responsible for beta-haemolysis on blood agar plates, and non-haemolytic colonies are ignored by clinical laboratory workers (James and McFarland, 1971). The role of SLS in clinical infections or in the pathogenesis of group A streptococci has been questioned because SLS- and SLS+ strains (assayed in vivo, however) have been isolated from incidents of epidemic pharyngitis, rheumatic fever and other infections. However, toxicity of SLS to erythrocytes, leucocytes and smooth muscle has qualified this extracellular product as an accessory virulence factor (Bernheimer, 1954). The use of tranposon Tn916 from S. faecalis to inactivate the genes required for the production of SLS has been reported by Nida and Cleary (1983). The same study reported that upon excision of the transposon, SLS was once again expressed. Such mutants will be invaluable in investigating of

the role of SLS in infection and in molecular analysis of this toxin, which is apparently simple, yet very difficult to study .

•

### REFERENCES

For Additional References (not in main list) see p 204a, b, c.

ABRAMSON, J. S., MILLS, E. L., SAWYER, M. K., REGELMANN, W. R., NELSON, J. D., and QUIE, P. G. (1981) recurrent infections and delayed separation of umbilical cord in an infant with abnormal phagocytic cell locomotion and oxidative response during particle phagocytosis. Journal of Pediatrics <u>99</u>: 887-94.

- ALOUF, J. E. (1980) Streptococcal toxins (streptolysin 0, streptolysin
- S, erythrogenic toxin) Pharmacology and Therapeutics <u>11</u>: 661-717.
  ALOUF, J. E. (1986) Interactions of bacterial proteins toxins with host defense mechanisms. *In* P. Falmagne, J. E. Alouf, FJ. Fehreubach, J. Jeljasweicz and M. Thelestam (ed). Bacterial Protein Toxins.
- ALOUF, J.E. and LORIDAN, C. (1986) Purification of RNA-core Induced Streptolysin S, and Isolation and Haemolytic Characteristics of the carrier-free Toxin. Journal of General Microbiology <u>132</u>:307-315.
- ALOUF, J.E. and LORIDAN .C. (1988) Production, purification and assay of SLS. Methods in enzymology, <u>165</u>: 59-64.
- ALLEN , R.C. (1981). Lucigenin chemiluminescence: a new approach to the study of polymorphonuclear leukocyte redox activity. In DELUCA, M. and McELORY, W.D. (eds). Bioluminescence and chemiluminescence : Basic chemistry and analytic applications. New York. Academic Press. p63.
- ALLEN, R.C. (1982) Biochemiexcitation : Chemiluminescence and study of biological oxygenation reactions. *In* Chemical and biological generation of excited states. ADAM. W., and CLIENTO (eds). p309.
- ANDERSEN, B. R. and DUNCAN, J. L. (1980) Activation of human neutrophil metabolism by streptolysin O. The Journal of Infectious Diseases

141:680-685.

- ANDERSON, D. C., SCHMALSTIEG F. C., FINEGOLD, M. J., HUGHES, B. I., ROTHLEIN, R. MILLER, L. J., KOHL, S. TOSI, M. F., JACOBS, R. L., WALDROP, T. L., GOLDMAN, A. S., SHEARER, W. T., and SPRINGER, T. A. (1985) The severe and moderate phenotypes of heritable Mac-1, LFA-1 defiency: their quantitative definition and relation to leukocyte dysfunction and clinical features. Journal of Infectious Diseases <u>152</u> : 668-89.
- ANDRUS, C.R., WALTER, M., JH and PAYNE, S.M. (1983) Synthesis of siderophore by pathogenic Vibrio species. Current Microbiology <u>9</u>: 209-214.
- ARNOLD, R.R., COLE, M.F., McGHEE, J.R. (1977) A bacterial effect for human lactoferrin. Science. <u>197</u>: 236-5.
- ARNOW, L.E. (1937) Colorimetric determination of the components of 3,4-dihydroxy phenylanine-tyrosines mixtures. Journal of Biological Chemistry <u>118</u>: 531-537.
- ARCHIBALD, F. (1983) Lactobacillus plantarum, an organism not requiring iron. Federation of European Microbiological Sciences Microbiology Letters <u>19</u>: 29-32.
- ATHERTON A. and BORN, G. V. R. (1972) Quantitative investigations of the adhesiveness of circulating polymorphonuclear leukocytes to blood vessel walls. Journal of Physiology <u>222</u>: 447-74.
- ASIEN, P. and BROWN EB. (1975) Structure and function of transferrin. Progress in Hematology <u>9</u>:25-56.
- ATKIN, C.L. and NEILANDS, J.B. (1966) Rhodotorulic acid, a diketopiperazine dihydroxamic acid with growth factor activity. I. Isolation and characterization. Biochemistry <u>7</u>: 3734-3739.

- AWAI, M. and BROWN, E.B. (1963) Studies of the metabolism of I<sup>131</sup>labelled human transferrin. Journal of laboratory Clinical Medicine <u>61</u>: 363-96.
- BARD, R. C. and GUNSALUS, I. C. (1950) Glucose metabolism of *Closteridium* perferingens : existence of metallo-aldolase. Journal of Bacteriology <u>59</u>: 387-400.
- BARNUM, W.D. (1977). Spectrophotometric deterimination of catechol, epinephrine, dopa, dopamine and other vic-diols. Annals of Chimica Acta <u>89</u>: 157-166.
- BENCHETRIT, L. C., AVELINO, C. C. and DE OLIVEIRA, C. M. (1984) Hyaluronidase production by groups A, B, C, and G streptococci : a statistical analysis. ZentralbL Bacteriol Mikrobiol Hyg (A) <u>257</u>: 22-37.
- BERNHEIMER, A. W. and RODBART, M. (1948) The effect of nucleic acids and of carbohydrates on the formation of streptolysin S. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>88</u>: 149-168.
- BERNHEIMER, A. W. (1949) Formation of bacterial toxins (Streptolysin S) by resting cells. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>90</u>: 373-392.
  BERNHEIMER, A. W. (1954) Streptolysins and their inhibitors. In

Streptococcal Infections pp. 19-38, McCARTY, M. (Ed.) Columbia University Press, New Yourk.

- BERNHEIMER, A. W. and SCHWARTZ, L. L. (1960) Leucocidal agents of haemolytic streptococci. Journal of Pathalogy and Bacteriology 79: 37-46.
- BERNHEIMER, A. W. and SCHWARTZ, L. L. (1965) Effects of staphylococcal and other bacterial toxins on platelets *in vitro*. Journal of Pathalogy and Bacteriology <u>89</u>: 209-223.

- BERNHEIMER, A. W. (1967) Physical behavior of streptolysin S. Journal of Bacteriology <u>93</u>, 2024-2025.
  - BERNHEIMER, A. W. (1972) Haemolysins of streptococci : characterization and effects on biological membranes. In Streptococci and Streptococcal Diseases pp. 19-31. Wannamaker, L. W. and Masten, J. M. (Eds), Academic Press, New Yourk.
  - BILLROTH, T. (1874) Untersuchungen uber die Vegatationsformen von Coccobacteria septica. George Reimer, Berlin.
  - BISHOP, C. R., ATHENS, J. W., BOGGS, D. R., WARNER, H. R., CARTWRIGHT, G. E. and WINTROBE, M. M. (1968) Leukokinetic studies. X111. A nonsteadystate kinetic evaluation of the mechanism of cortisone-induced granulocytosis. Journal of Clinical Investigation <u>47</u>: 249-60.
  - BRADFORD, M. M. (1976) A rapid and sensitive method for the quantification of microgram quantities of protein utilizing the principles of protein-dye binding. Analytic Biochemistry <u>72</u>: 248-254.
  - BULLEN, J.J. and GRIFFITHS, E. (1987) Iron and infection. Molecular, physiological and clinical aspects. John Wiley and sons.
  - CALANDRA, G.B. and OGINSKY, E.L. (1975) Cellular SLS-related hemolysins of group A streptococcus C203S. Infection and Immunity. <u>12</u>: 13-28.
  - CALANDRA, G.B. \_\_\_\_\_ and COLE, R. M. (1976) Relationship of cellular potential haemolysis in group A streptococci to extracellular streptolysins. Infection and Immunity. <u>13:</u> 813-817.
  - CALANDRA, G.B. and COLE R.M. (1981) Membrane and cytoplasmic location of streptolysin S precursor. Infection and Immunity <u>31</u>: 360-90.

CANTACUZENE and BONCIU O (1926) Cited by G.COLMAN *In* M. TOM PARKER and LESLIE H. COLLIER (Editors), Topley and wilson's Principles and Bacteriology, Virology, and Immunity, 8th Ed., Volume 2, Edward Arnold , London. p18.

CARLSON, A. S., KELLNER, A., BERNHEIMER, A. W., and FREEMAN, E. B. (1957) A streptococcal enzyme that acts specifically upon diphosphopyridine nucleotide. Characterization of the enzyme and its separation from Streptolysin O. Journal of Experimental Medicine. <u>106</u>: 15-37.

- CARRANO, C. J., AND RAYMOND, K. N. (1979) Ferric iron sequestering agents. 2. Kinetics and mechanisms of iron removal from transferrin by enterochellin and synthetic tricatechols. Journal of the American Society <u>101</u>: 5401-5404.
- CARLSSON, J., HOFLING, J.F., and SUNDQVIST, G.K. (1984) Degradation of albumin, haemopexin, haptoglobin and transferrin by backpigmented *Bacteriodes* species. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>18</u>: 39-46.
- CAVALIERI, S.J., BOHACH, G.A. and SYNDER, I.S. (1984). Escherichia coli  $\alpha$ -haemolysin : Characteristics and probe role in pathogenicity . Microbial Reviews <u>48</u>; 326-343.
- CHRISTENSEN, L.R. (1945) Streptococcal fibrinolysin : A proteolytic reaction due to serum enzyme activated by streptococcal fibrinolysin Journal of General Physiology <u>28</u> : 363-383.
- CLARK, R. A. (1990) The human respiratory burst oxidase. The Journal of Infectious Diseases <u>161</u>: 1140-1147.
- CLEGG, R.A. and GARLAND, P.B. 1971. A comparison of mitochondria from *Torulopsis utilis* grown in continuous culture with glycerol,

iron, ammonium, manganesium or phosphate as the growth limiting nutrient. Biochemical Journal 124-135.

- COLMAN, G. (1990) Streptococcus and Lactobacillus. In M. TOM PARKER and LESLIE H. COLLIER (Editors), Topley and wilson's Principles and Bacteriology, Virology, and Immunity, 8th Ed., Volume 2, Edward Arnold , London. p18.
- CONE.L., WOODARD, D. R., SCHLIEVERT, P. M. and TOMORY, G. S. (1987)
  Clinical and bacteriological observations of toxic shock-like
  syndrome due to Streptococcus pyogenes. New England Journal of
  Medicine. 317: 146- 149.
- CONRAD, M. E. and BARTON, J. C. (1981) Factors affecting iron balance. American Journal of Haematology <u>10</u>: 199-255.
- CONTACUZENE J, CZUPRYNSKI, C.J. and NOEL, E.J. (1990) Influence of *Pasteurella haemolytica* AI crude leukotoxin on bovine neutrophil chemiluminescence. Infection and Immunity <u>58</u>: 1485-1487.
- COOK, J., and FINSHAM, W.J. (1966) Arthritis produced by intra-articular injections of streptolysin S in rabbits. Journal of Pathology and Bacteriology <u>92</u>: 461-470.
- COWART R.E., and FOSTER B.G. (1981) The role of iron in the production of hemolysin by *Listeria monocytogenes*. Current Microbiology <u>6</u>: 287-90.
- COWART, R.E., and FOSTER, B.G. (1985) Differential effects of iron on the growth of *Listeria monocytogenes* requirements and mechanism of acquisition. Journal of Infectious Diseases <u>151</u>: 721-730.
- COWELL, J. L. and BERNHEIMER, A. W. (1977) Antigenic relationships among thiol-activated cytolysins. Infection and Immunity <u>16</u>: 397-399. CZAKY, T.Z. (1948). On the estimation of bound Hydroxylamine in

biological materials. Acta Chemica Scandinavica 2:450-454.

- DANA, N., TODD, R.F III., PITT.J., SPRINGER.T.A., and ARNAOUT, M.A. (1984) Defenciency of a surface membrane glycoprotein (Mo 1) in man. Journal of Clinical Investigation. <u>73</u>: 153-9.
- DAVISON, M.J., DOWNIEW, J.A., and GARLAND, P.B. (1974) Cited by J.B. Neilands. In Microbial metabolism, A comprehensive treatise. Academic Press, New York.
- DECHATELET, L.R., LONG, G.D., SHIRLEY, P.S., BASS, D.A., THOMAS, M.J., HANDERSON, F.W. and COHEN, M.S. (1982) Mechanism of the luminoldependent chemiluminescence of human neutrophils. Journal of Immunology <u>129</u>: 1589-1593.
- DEIBEL, R. H. (1963) Haemolysis of proteins and nucleic acids by Lancefield group A and other streptococci. Journal of Bacteriology <u>86</u>: 1270-1282.
- DEWALD, B., BRETZ, U., and BAGGIOLINI, M. (1982) Release of gelatinase from a novel secretory component of human neutrophils. Journal of Clinical Investigation <u>70</u>: 518-25.
- DILLON, H. C. and WANNAMAKER, L. W. (1965) Physical and immunological differences among streptokinases. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>121</u>: 351-371.
- DIXON, M., and WEBB, E.C. (eds). (1958) "Enzymes", p. 242. Longmans, Green, London.
- DUNCAN, J.L. and MASON, L. (1976) Characteristics of streptolysin 5 haemolysin. Infection and Immunity <u>14</u>: 77-82.
- EATON, J., BRANDT, P., MAHONEY, J.R., and LEE, J.T. (1982) Haptoglobin: a natural bacteriostat. Science <u>215</u>: 691-692.

ELIAS N., HELLER, M., and GINSBURG, I. (1966) Binding of Streptolysin S

-180-

-181-

to red cell ghosts and ghost lipids. Israel Journal of Medical Science <u>2</u>: 302-309.

- EVANS, S.L., ARCENEAUX, L.E.J., BYERS, R.B., MARTIN, M.E., and ARANHAS, H. (1986) Ferrous iron transport in *Streptococcus mutans*. Joural of Bacteriology <u>168</u>: 1096-1099.
- FARROW, J. A. E. and COLLINS, M. D. (1984) DNA base composition, DNA/DNA homology and long chain - fatty acid studies on Streptococcus thermophilus and Streptococcal salivarius. Journal of General Microbiology 130: 357-362.
- FEHLEISEN . (1883) On erysipelas. In New Sydenham Society (1886) 115:261.
- FERETTI,J.J., and YU, C.E (1987) In FERETTI JJ, CURTISS R (eds)
  Streptococcal genetics. American Society for Microbiology,
  Washington .p. 130.
- FINE, D. P., MARNEY, S. R., COLLEY, G. D., SERGENT, J. S., and DESPREZ, R. M. (1972) C3 shunt activation in human serum chelated with EGTA. The Journal of Immunology <u>109</u>: 807-809.
- FINKELSTEIN, R.A., SCIO ORTINO, C.V., and McINTOSH, M.A. (1983) Role of iron in microbe-host interactions. Reviews of Infectious Diseases <u>5</u>: 5759-5776.
- FISCHETTI .V.A. (1978) Streptococcal M-protein extracted by nonionic detergent. III. correlation between immunological crossreactions and structural similarities with implication for antiphagocytosis. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>147</u>: 1771-1778.
- FISCHETTI, V. A., ZABRISKIE, J. B., and GOTSCHLICH. E. C. (1974) Physical, chemical, and biological properties of type 6 M-protein

extracted with purified streptococcal phage-associated lysin . p.26-37. In M.J.HAVERKORN (ed). Streptococcal disease and the community. Expectra Medica Amsterdam .

- FISCHETTI .V.A. (1989) Streptococcal M protein : Molecular design and Biological behavior. Clinical Microbiology Reviews. <u>2</u>: 285-314.
- FISCHETTI.V.A. (1991) Streptococcal M-protein. Scientific American. 32-49. June.
- FOX, E. N. (1974) M-proteins of group A streptococci. Bacteriological Review. <u>38</u>: 57-86.
- FOX, E. N. and WITTNER M. K. (1965) The multiple molecular structure of the M-proteins of group A streptococci. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the Uinted States of America (Washington DC) <u>54</u>: 1118-1125.
- FOX, E. N. and M. K. WITTNER. (1969) New observations on the structure and antigenicity of the M-proteins of group A streptococcus. Immunochemistry <u>6</u>: 11-24.
- FRANCIS, T. R., BOOTH, W. J., and BECKER, R. R. (1985) Uptake of iron from haptoglobin-haemoglobin complex by haemolytic bacteria. International Journal of Biochemistry <u>7</u>: 767-773.
- FRANKEL, A. (1886) Cited by Parker, M. T. (1983) in *Streptococcus* and *Lactobacillus*. Topley and Wilson . p 147.
- FRASER, C. A. M. (1982) Preparation of specific antisera to the opacity factors of group A streptococci. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>15</u>: 153-162.
- FRIOU, G. J. and WENNER, H. A. (1947) On the occurrence in human serum of an inhibitory substance to hyaluronidase produced by a strain of haemolytic streptococcus. Journal of Infectious Diseases <u>80</u>: 185.

- GANZ, T., SELSTED, M. E., SZKLARET, D., HARWIG, S. L., DAHER, K., BAINTON, and D. F., LEHRER, R. I. (1985) Defensions. Natural peptide antibiotics of human neutrophils. Journal of Clinical Investigation 76: 1427-35.
- GAWORZEWSKA, E. and COLMAN, G. (1988) Changes in the pattern of infection caused by *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Epidemiology and Infection <u>100</u>: 257-269.

GERLACH, D. and KOHLER, W. (1979) Zentralblatt fur Bakteriologie, Parasitenkunde, Infektionskrankeiten und Hygiene <u>A244</u>: 210.

- GIBSON, F. and MAGRATH, D. I. (1969) The isolation and characterization of a hydroxamic acid (aerobactin) formed by *Aerobacter aerogenes* 62-1. Bichemica et biophysica Acta 192:175-184.
- GINSBURG, I. and GROSSOWICZ, N. (1958) Group A haemolytic streptococci.

   A chemically defined medium for growth from small inocula Proceedings of the Society for Experimental Biology and Medicine
   96: 108-115.
- GINSBURG, I. and GROSSOWICZ, N. (1960) Oxygen-stable haemolysins of group A streptococci I. the role of various agents in the production of the haemolysins. Journal of Experimental Medicine. 118: 905-917.
- GINSBURG, I. and HARRIS, T. N. (1963) Oxygen stable haemolysin of Group A streptococcus. II. Chromatographic and electrophoretic studies. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>118</u>: 919-934.
- GINSBURG, I. and HARRIS, T.N. (1965) Oxygen stable haemolysins of group A streptococci .IV. Studies on the mechanism of lysis by cell bound haemolysin of red blood cells and Ehrilich ascites tumor cells. Journal of Experimental medicine. Eergebisse

MikroBiologie Immunitatsforschung

- GINSBURG, I. (1970) Streptolysin S. In Microbial toxins p. 99-171. Edited by MONTIE, T.C., KADIS, S. and AJIL, S.J. Volume III.
- GINSBURG, I. (1972) Mechanisms of cell and tissue injury induced by group A streptococci : relation to post streptococcal sequelae . Journal of Infectious Diseases, 126: 294-340.
- GREEN, N. E. (1979) A simple biological method for detecting streptococcal nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide glycohydrolase Journal of Clinical Pathology. <u>32</u>: 556-559.
- GRIFFITHS, E. (1983) Adaptation and multiplication of bacteria in host tissues. Philosophical transaction of the Royal Society of London. Series B: Biological Sciences <u>303</u>: 85-96.
- GRIFFITHS, E. (1987) Iron in biological system. *In* Iron and infection. J.J.BULLEN and E.GRIFFTHS (ed). John Wiley & Sons.
- GRIFFITHS, B. R. and McCLAIN, O. (1988) The role of iron in the growth
  and haemolysin (Streptolysin S) production in Streptococcus
  pyogenes. Journal of Basic Microbiology 28: 427-436.
- GRIFFITHS, S. P. and GERSONY, W. M. (1990) Acute rheumatic fever in New York city (1969-1988) : A comparative study of two decades . The Journal of Pediatrics <u>16</u>: 882-887.
- HALBERT, S. P., BIRCHER, R. and DAHLE, E. (1961) The analysis of streptococcal infections. V. Cardiotoxicity of streptolysin O for rabbits in vivo. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>113</u>: 759-784.
- HALLAS, G. and WIDDOWSON, J. P. (1983) The relationship between opacity factor and M-protein in *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>16</u>: 13-26.

HARRIS, W.R., CARRANO, C.J., COOPER, S.R., SOFTEN, S.R., AVDEEF, A.E.,

McARDLE, J.V., and RAYMOND, K.N. (1979). Co-ordination chemistry of microbial iron transport compounds. 19: Stability constants and electrochemical behaviour of ferric enterebactin and more complexes. Journal of the American Society <u>101</u>: 5097-6104.

HARRISON P. M. (1979) Iron storage in bacteria. Nature <u>279</u>: 15-16.
HERBERT, D. and TODD, E. W. (1944) The oxygen-stable haemolysin of group A streptococci (streptolysin S). British Journal of Experimental Pathology <u>25</u>: 242-254.

- HEWITT, L.F. and TODD, E.W. (1944) The effect of cholesterol and sera contaminated with bacteria on the haemolysin produced by haemolytic streptococci. Journal of Pathology and Bacteriology. <u>49</u>: 45-51.
- HIRSH, J.G., BERNHEIMER, A.W. and WEISSMANN, G. (1963) Motion picture study of the toxic action of streptolysins on leukocytes. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>118</u> : 223-228.
- HOOKER, S. B. and FOLLENSBY, E. M. (1934) Studies of scarlet fever. II. Different toxins produced by haemolytic streptococci scarlatinal origin. Journal of Immunnology. <u>27</u>: 177.
- HORWITZ, M. A., and SILVERSTEIN, S. C. (1980) Influence of Escherichia coli capsule on complement fixation and on phagocytosis and killing by human phagocytes. Journal of Clinical Investigation 65: 82-94.
- HOSOYA, S. T., HAYASHI, Y., MORI, F., EGAMI, M., SHIMOMURA, Y., YAGI, and Y. SUZUKI. (1949) Studies on the haemolysin of haemolytic streptococcus. 1. The haemolysin obtained from the nucleic acid added in broth culture of haemolytic streptococcus. Japan Journal of Experimental Medicine 20: 25-26.

HOSOYA, S.T., HAYASHI,Y., HOMMA,F. EGAMI, M., SHIMOMURA,Y. and YAGI, 1949) Studies on the haemolysin of haemolytic streptococci .II. The haemolysin obtained by shaking a mixture of haemolytic streptococci with nucleic acid solution. Japan Journal of Experimental Medicine 20: 27-36.

- HOWARD, J. G., and WALLACE, K. R. (1953) The comparative resistances of the red cells of various species to haemolysins by streptolysin O and by saponin. British Journal of Experimental Pathology <u>34</u>: 185-190.
- HRYNIEWICZ, W. and PRYJMA.J. (1977) Effect of streptolysin S on human and mouse T and B lympholycytes. Infection and Immunity <u>16</u>:730-733.
- HRYNIEWICZ, W. and PRYJMA.J. (1978) Action of streptolysin S on cells concerned in the immune reaction. In Pathogenic Streptococci pp. 59-60. PARKER, M.T. (Ed) Reed books Ltd. Chertsey, surrey, United Kingdom.
- HRYNIEWICZ, W., PRYJMA, J. and PRYJMA, K. (1980) Influence of streptolysin S on lymphocyte functions. Current Microbiology <u>3</u>: 225-230.

HRYNIEWICZ, W., PRYJMA, J., PITUCH, A. NOWOROLASKA and KANCLERSKI, K. (1984) Influense of SLS on T lymphocytes subpopulations. Bacterial Protein Toxins. ISBN: 0-12-053080-5.

HRYNIEWICZ, W., ROSZKOWSKI. W, RYKIEL. B, KANCLERSKI. K, and JELJASZEWICZ. J. (1986) Effect of streptolysin S from Streptococcus pyogenes on contact sensitivity in mice. Zentralblatt fur Bakteriologie Mikrobiologie and Hygiene Series A. A 261, 454.
HUMPHREY, J. H. (1949) The nature of antistreptolysin "S" in the sera of man and of other species : antistreptolysin titres in normal and diseased states. British Journal of Experimental Pathology 30,345-351.

- HYNES, W. L.; and WEEKS, C. R. (1987) Immunological cross-reactivity of type A streptococcal exotoxin (Erythrogenic toxin) and staphylococcal enterotoxins B and C 1. Infection and Immunity <u>55</u>: 837-838.
- ITO, R. (1940) Uber die 'hochgradige Steigerung des hamolysinbildumgsvmogens Streptococcus haemolyticus dur Nukleinsaure, uberdie Eigenschftendes streptolysins. Folia Pharmacol Japon (Brev) <u>28</u>: 71-72.
- IACOPETTA, B.J., MORGAN, E.H., and YEOH, G.C. (1982) Transferrin receptors and iron uptake during erythroid cell development. Biochim Biophys Acta <u>687</u>: 204-10.
- JAMES, L. and McFARLAND. (1971) An epidemic of pharygitis due to a non-haemolytic group A streptococcus at Lowry Air Force base. New England Journal of Medicine <u>284</u>: 750-752.
- JELJASZEWICZ, J., SZMIGIELSKI, S., and HRYNIEWICZ, W. (1978) Biological effects of staphylococcal and streptococcal toxins. *In* Bacterial toxins and cell membranes pp. 185-227, JELJASZEWICZ, and WADSTROM. T. (eds) Academic Press, New York.
- JONES, D. (1978). Composition and differentiation of the genus
  Streptococcus. In Skinner and Quesnel (eds), Streptococci,
  Society for Applied Bacteriology Symposium Series No. 7, Academic
  Press, London. New York and San Francisco, p. 1-49.
  JOHNSON, L. P. ; L'ITALLIEN, J. J. and SCHLIEVERT , P. M. (1986)

Streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxin type A (scarlet fever toxin) is

related to *Staphylococcus aureus* enterotoxin b. Molecular and General Genetics <u>203</u> : 354-356.

- JOHNSON, D. R. and KAPLAN, E. L. (1988) Microtechnique for serum opacity factor characterization of group A streptococci adaptable to the use of human sera. Journal of Clinical Microbilogy <u>26</u>: 2025.
- JOHNSTON, K, H. and ZABRISKIE, J. B. (1986) Purification and partial characterization of the nephritis strain - associated protein from *Streptococcus pyogenes* Group A. Journal of Experimental Medicine. <u>163</u>: 697-712.
- KADURUGAMUWA, L. J. ANWAR, H., BROWN, R. W. M., SHAND, H. G., WARD, H. K. (1987) Media for study of growth kinetics and envelope properties of iron-deprived bacteria. Journal of Clinical Microbiology <u>22</u> : 849-855.
- KAUPPINEN, V. (1963) Cited by J.B. Neilands in Microbial metabolism. In A comprehensive treatise (1974), Academic Press, New York. KAUPPINEN, V. (1967) Automated determination of serum iron.
- Scand, Journal of Clinical Laboratory Investigation 20:24-28.
- KAPLAN, M. H. (1944) Nature and role of lytic factor in haemolytic streptococcal fibrinolysin. Proceedings of the Society for Experimental Biology and Medicine (New York) <u>57</u>: 40-43.
- KAPLAN, M. H. (1946) Studies on Streptococcus fibrinolysis. II. The inhibition of streptococcal fibrinolysin and anti-fibrinolysin and proteinase. Journal of Clinical Investigation. <u>25</u>: 337-346
- KEHOE, M. A., and TIMMIS, K. N. (1984) Cloning and expression in Escherchia coli of the streptolysin O : Characterisation of the absence of substantial homology with determinants of other thiol-activated toxins. Infection and Immunity <u>43</u>: 804-810.

- KEHOE, M. A. and MILLER, L. (1987) Nucleotide sequence of the streptolysin O (SLO) gene : Structural homologies between SLO and other membrane-damaging thiol-activated toxins. Infection and Immunity <u>55</u>: 3228-3232.
- KEISER, H., KUSHNER, I., and KAPLAN, M. H. (1971) "Nonspecific" stimulation of lymphocyte transformation by cellular fractions and acid extracts of group A streptococci. Journal of Immunology. <u>106</u>: 1593-1601.
- KEISER, H., WEISSMAN, G. and BERNHEIMER, A. W. (1964) Studies on liposomes. IV. solub lisation of enzymes during mitochondrial swelling and disruption of liposomes by streptolysin S and other haemolytic agents. Journal, of Cell Biology <u>22</u>: 101-113.
- KELLNER, A. FREEMAN, E. B. and CARLSON, A. S. (1958) Neutralization antibodies to streptococcal diphosphopyridine nucleotidase in the serum of experimental animals and human beings. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>108</u>: 299-309.
- KENT, K. A., LEMCKE, R. M. and LYSONS, R. J. (1988) Production , purification and molecular weight determination of the haemolysin of *Treponema hyodysenteriae*. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>27</u>: 215-224.
- KENT, K. A., LYSONS, R. J., BLAND, A. P., SELLWOOD, R., ROBINSON, W. F., and FROST. A. J. (1991) A cytotoxic haemolysin from *Treponema hyodysenteriae* a probable virulence determinant in swine dysentery. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>34</u>: 97-102.
- KHARAZMI, A., HOIBBY, N., DORING, G. and VALERIUS, N. H. (1984)
  Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoprotease inhibit human neutrophil
  chemiluminescence. Infection and Immunity <u>44</u>: 587-591.

KNIGHT, E., and HARDLY, R. R. W. F. (1962) . Isolation and characteristics of flavodoxin from nitrogen-fixing *Clostridium* pasteurianum . Journal of Biological Chemistry <u>241</u>: 2752-2756.

- KONOPKA,K., MARCESCHAL, J.C. and CRICHTON RR. (1980) Iron transfer from transferrin to ferritin mediated by pyrophophate. Biochem Biophys Res Commun <u>96</u>, 1408-13.
- KOYAMA, J. and EGAMI, F. (1964). Biochemical studies on streptolysin S.
  3. Polypeptide-oligoribonucleotide complex nature of the toxin.
  Journal of Biochemistry (Tokyo) <u>55</u>: 629-35.
- KRAUSE, R. M. and McCARTY, M. (1961) Studies on the chemical structure of the streptococcal cell wall. 1. The identification of a mucopeptide in the cell walls of groups A and A-variant streptococci. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>114</u>: 127-140.
- KRAUSE, R. M. (1963) Symposium on relationship of structure of microorganisms to their immunological properties. 1V. Antigenic and biochemical composition of haemolytic streptococcal cell walls. Bacteriological Reviews. <u>27</u>: 369.
- LACXIE, J. M. (1982) Aspects of the behaviour of neutrophil leucocytes. In BILLAIRS, R., CURTIS, A. and DUNN, G, (eds). Cell Behaviour. Cambridge University Press. pp 319-348.
- LAEMMLI, U.K. (1970) Cleavage of structural proteins during the assembly of head of bacteriophage T4. Nature <u>227</u>: 680-685.
- LAI, C. Y., WANG, M. T., DEFARIA, J. B., AND T. AKAO (1978) Streptolysin S : Improved purification and characterization . Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics <u>191</u>: 804-812, .
- LANCEFIELD, R.C. (1923) The antigenic complex of *Streptococcus hemolyticus*. 1. Demonstration of type specific substance in

extracts of *Streptococcus hemolyticus* . Journal of Experimental Medicine . <u>47</u>: 91-103.

LANCEFIELD, R. C, and TODD, E. W. (1928) Antigenic differences between matt hemolytic Streptococci and their Glossy variants . Journal of Experimental Medicine 90: 293-297 .

LANCEFIELD, R.C. (1942) Harvey Lectures 36:251

- LANCEFIELD, R. C. (1959) Persistence of type specific antibodies in man following infection with group A streptococci . Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>110</u>: 271-292.
- LANCEFIELD, R.C. (1962) Current knowledge of the type specific Mantigens of group A streptococci . Journal of Immunology . <u>89</u>: 307-313.
- LANKFORD, C.E. (1973) Bacterial assimiliation of iron. CRC Critical Reviews in Microbiology. <u>2</u>:273-331.
- LAZARIDES, P.D. and BERNHEIMER, A.W. (1957). Association of production of DPNase with serological type of group A streptococcus. Journal of Bacteriology <u>74</u>: 412-413.
- LEE, P. K. and P. M. SCHLIEVERT. (1989) Quantification and Toxicity of Group A Streptococcal Pyrogenic Exotoxins in an Animal Model of Toxic Shock Syndrome-Like Illness <u>27</u>: 1890-1892 .
- LEEDOM, J. M., and BARKULIS, S. S. (1959) Studies on virulence of group A beta-haemolytic streptococci. Journal of Bacteriology <u>78</u>: 687-694.
- LEFFELL, M. S., and SPITZNAGEL. J. K. (1972) Association of lactoferrin with lysozyme in granules of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes . Infection and Immunity <u>6</u>: 761-5.

LEMCXE, R. M. and BURROWS, M. R. (1982) Studies on haemolysin produced by

-191-

Treponema hyodysenteriae . Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>15</u>: 205-214.

LEW, D. P., ANDERSSON, T., HED, J., DIVIRGILO, F., POZZAN, T., and STENDAHL, O. (1985) Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent and Ca<sup>2+</sup>-independent

phagocytosis in human neutrophils. Nature 315: 509-11.

LUTTICKEN, R., WENDORFF, U., LUTTICKEN, D., JOHNSON, E. A., and WANNAMAKER, LW. (1978) Studies on streptococci and on associated surface-protein antigen. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>11</u>: 419-431.

MANJULA, B. N., A. S. ACHARYA, T. FAIRWELL, and V. A. FISCHETTI. (1986)

Antigenic domains of the Streptococcal Pep M5 protein : localization of epitopes crossreactive with type 6 M protein and identification of a hypervariable region of the M molecule. Journal of Experimental Medicine 163: 129-138.

MARCELIS, J. H., HANNEKE, J. D., JACOMINA A. A. and HOOGKAMP,

K. (1978) Iron requirement and chelator production of Staphlococci, Streptococcus faecalis and enterobacteriacae. Antonie van Leeuwen hoek <u>44</u>: 257-267.

- MARMOREK, A. (1995) Le streptocoque et le serum antistreptococcique. Annales Institut Pasteur <u>9</u>: 593-620.
- MARTIN, P.G., LACHANCE, P. and NIVEN, D.F. (1985) Production of RNAdependent haemolysin by *Haemophilus pleuroneumoniae*. Canadian Journal of Microbiology <u>31</u>: 456-462.
- MARX, J.J., GERBIND, JAGK., NISHISTO, T., and ASIEN, P. (1982) Molecular aspects of the binding of absorbed iron to transferrin. British Journal of Haematology . <u>52</u>: 105-110.
- MASSON, P.L., HEREMANS, J.F, and SCHONNE E. (1966) An iron-binding protein common to many external secretions. Clinica Chimica Acta (Amsterdam) <u>14</u>: 735-9.

MASSON, P.L, HEREMANS , J.F, and SCHONNE E. (1969) Lactoferrin, an iron-binding protein in neutrophilic leukocytes. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>130</u>: 643-58.

-193-

- MATTHHAY, K, K., MENTZER, W. C., WARA, D. W., PREISLER, H. K., LAMBERS, N. B., and AMMANN, A. J. (1981) Evalution of the opsonic requirements for phagocytosis of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* serotypes VII, XIV, and XIX by chemiluminesence assay. Infection and Immunity <u>31</u>: 228-235.
- MAXTED, W. R., WIDDOWSON, J. P. A. and FRASER, C. A. M. (1973) Antibody to streptococcal opacity factor in human sera. Journal of Hygiene <u>71</u>: 35-42.
- MAXTED. W.R. (1978) Group A streptococci : pathogenesis and Immunity. In Streptoccci. (Editors F.A.Skinner and L.B.Quensil). Pages 107-125. Academic Press. London.
- McCLEAN (1941) Cited by Parker, M.T. (1983) In Streptococcus and Lactobacillus. Topley and Wilson. p 186.
- McMILLAN, R.A. and BLOOMSTER, T.A., SAEED, A.M., HENDERSON, K.L., ZINN, N.E., ABERNATHY, R., WATSON, D.W., and GREENBERG, R.N. (1987) Characterisation of a fourth streptococcal exotoxin (SPE-D) Federation of European Microbiological Societies letters <u>44</u>: 317-322.
- MESSENGER, A. J. M. & RATLEDGE, C . (1986) Siderophores. In Comprehensive Biotechnolgy. The principles, applications and regulations of biotechnology in industry, agriculture and medicine . (Editor M. Moo Young ). Volume 3, Chapter 13: 275-295.

- MEYER, K., HOBBY, G. L., CHAFEE, E. and DAWSON, M. H. (1940) The hydrolysis of hyaluronic acid by bacterial enzymes. Journal of Experimental Medicine. <u>71</u>: 137-146.
- MICKELSON, P.A. and P.F.SPARLING. (1981) Ability of *Neisseria* gonorrhoeae, *N. meningitidis* and commensal *Neisseria* species to obtain iron from transferrin and iron compounds. Infection and Immunity. <u>33</u>: 555-564.
- MIMS, C. A. (1982) In "The Pathogenesis of Infectious Diseases".pp. 56-81, Academic Press, london.
- MONTIE, T.C. (1970) In Microbial toxins. MONTIE, KADIS, S. and AJL.S.J. (Eds) Volume III. Academic Press. New York.p 99-171.
- MORRISON, D. C. and KLINE, L. F. (1977) Activation of classical and properdin pathways of complement by bacterial lipopolysaccharides (LPS). Journal of Immunology. <u>118</u>: 362-8.
- MURRAY, P.R. (1990). Microbial physiology and structure . p 73. In Medical Microbiology. The C.V. Mosby company.
- NEILANDS, J.B. (1984) Siderophores of bacteria and fungi. Microbiological Sciences <u>1</u>: 9-14.
- NIDA, K. and CLEARY, P. P. (1983) Insertional inactivation of streptolysin S expression in *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Journal of Bacteriology <u>155</u>: 1156-1161.
- NORROD, P. and WILLIAMS, R. P. (1978) Growth of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in media deficient in iron without detection of siderophores. Current Microbiology <u>1</u>: 281-284.
- NOCARD and MOLLEREAU (1887) Sur Une Mammite Contagieuse Annales Institut Pasteur <u>1</u>: 109.

OAKLEY, B.R., KIRSCH, D.R. and MORRIS, R. (1980) A simplified

ultrasensitive stain for detecting proteins in polyacrylamide gels. Analytical Biochemistry <u>105</u>: 361-363.

- O'BRIEN, I.G., COX, G.B., and GIBSON , F. (1969) 2,3-Dihydroxy N-Benzoylserine : Chemical synthesis and comparison with the natural product . Biochimica et Biophysica Acta <u>177</u>: 321-328.
- O'BRIEN, I.G., and GIBSON, F. (1970) The structure of enterochelin and related 2,3-Dihydroxy N-Benzoylserine conjugates from *Escherichia coli*. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta <u>215</u> 339-402. <u>237</u>:537.
- OFEK, T., ROBINOWITZ, S.B., and GINSBURG, I. (1970) Oxygen-stable Hemolysins of group A streptococci VII. The relation of the leukotoxic factor to streptolysin S. The Journal of Infectious Diseases <u>19</u>: 22.
- OFEK, I., S. BERGER-RABINOWITZ and DAVIS, A.M. (1969) Opsonic activity of type -specific streptococcal antibodies . Isrrael Journal of Medical Science <u>5</u>: 293.
- OHANIAN, B. S. and SCHWAB, J. H. (1967) Persistence of group A streptococcal cell walls related to chronic inflammation of rabbit dermal connective tissue . Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>125</u> : 1137-1148.
- OKAMOTO.H. (1939) Uber die hochgradgie steigerung des Hamolysinbildun g svermoogens des *Streptococcus haemolyticus* durch Nukleinsaure. Japanese Journal of Medical Sciences <u>12</u>: 167-208.
- OKAMOTO.H. (1962) Biochemical study of the streptolysin 5 inducing effect of ribonucleic acid. A review Ann. Rept. Res.Inst. Tuberc., Kanazawa University <u>19</u>:165.

OKAMOTO, H., KOYDA, S., and ITO, R (1941) Uber die hochgradige

Steigerung des Ha motoxin bild ungsvermogens des *Streptococcus haemolyticus* durch Nukleinsaure VII . Weitere Ergebnisse der untersuchng zur darstellung hochgernigter streptolysin praparate. Japanase Journal Medical science. IV . Pharmocology <u>14</u>: 99-113.

- OKAMOTO.H. (1976) Antitumor Activity of Streptolysin S-forming Streptococci. In Mechanisms in Bacterial Toxinology. By Alan. W., Bernheimer. John Wiley and and Sons. page 237.
- OKAMOTO.H., SHOIN, S. and KOSHIMURA, S. (1978) Streptolysin S forming and antitumour activities of group A streptococci. *In* Bacterial Toxins and Cell Membranes .p. 259-289. JELJASZEWICZ J. and WADSTROM, T. (Eds) , Academic Press , New York.
- PARKASH, K. and DUTTA, S. (1991) Antibodies to streptococcal opacity factor in a selected Indian population. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>34</u>, 119-124.
- PARKER, M. T. (1967) International survey of the distribution of serotype of *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Group A streptococci ). Bulletin of the World Health Organization <u>37</u>: 513-527.
- PARKER, M. T. (1978) The pattern of streptococcal diseases in man. *In* Streptococci. F. A. SKINNER and L. B. QUESNEL (eds), Academic Press (London). p 71.
- PARKER , M.T. (1983) Streptococcus and Lactobacillus. In Topley and Wilson's, Priciples of Bacteriology , Virology and Immunity . Volume 2 . Seventh edition . Edited by M.T.PARKER.
- PASTEUR, L., CHAMBERLAND, C. and ROUX, E. (1881) Surune maladie nouvelte, provoquee parla saliva dum enfant mort de la range. Comptes Rendus Academic sciences <u>92</u>: 159-165.

PETREQUIN, P. R., TODD, R. F., DEVALL, L. J., BOXER, L. A., and CURNUTTE,

-196-

J.T. III (1987) Association between gelatinase release and increased plasma membrane expression in Mol glycoprotein. Blood 69:605-10.

- PIKE, R. M. (1948) Streptococcal hyaluronic acid and hyaluronidase. I. Hyaluronidase activity of non-specific capsulated group A streptococci. Journal of Infectious Diseases <u>88</u>: 1-12.
- PYNE, S. M. and FINKELSEIN, R. A. 1978. Siderophore production by Vibrio cholerae. Infection and Immunity 20: 310-311.
- QUESENBERRY, P. and LEVITT, L. (1979) Haematopoietic stem cells. New England Journal of Medicine <u>301</u>:755-60.
- RAPP, K.S., JUNG, G., MEIWES, J., and ZAHNER, H. (1990) Staphyloferrin A: a structurally new siderophore from staphylococci. European Journal of Biochemistry <u>191</u>: 65-74.
- RAYMOND, J. B. (1986) Iron : a controlling nutrient in proliferative processes. Trends in Biocnemical Sciences <u>II</u>:
- RIJN, D. V. and KESSLER, E. R. (1980) Growth characteristics of group A streptococci in a new chemically defined medium. Infection and Immunnity <u>27</u>: 444-448.
- ROGERS, H.J. (1973) Iron binding catechols and virulence in *E. coli*. Infection and Immunity .<u>7</u>: 445-456
- ROSENBACH, F.J. (1884) Mikro-organismen bei den Wund-infections-Krankhheiten des Menschen. Weisbaden: J.F.Bergman .
- ROTTA, J. (1986) Pyogenic haemolytic streptococci. In Bergey's Manual of systematic Bacteriology <u>2</u>: 1048.
- SAHEB, S.A., LALLIER, R., MASSICOTTE, L., LAFLEUR, L., LEMIEUX, S. (1981) Biological activity of *Treponema hyodysenteriae* haemolysin. Current Microbiology <u>5</u>: 91-94.

- SANC HEZ-MADRID, F., NAGY, J.A., ROBBINS, E., SIMON, P. and SPRINGER, T.A. (1983) A human leukocyte differentiation antigen family with distinct  $\alpha$ - subunit: the lymphocyte-function-associated antigen (LFA-1), the C3b; molecule . Journal of Experimental Medicine 306: 693-9.
- SAWYER, D. W., DONOWITZ, G. R., and MANDELL, G. 1. (1989) Polymorphonuclear Neutrophils: An effective antimicrobial force. Reviews of Infectióus Diseases <u>11</u>(Supplement 7): 1532-1544.
- SAWYER, D. W., SULLIVAN, J. A., and MANDELL, G. 1. (1985) Intracellular free calcium localization in neutrophils during phagocytosis . Science 230: 663-6. STEWART, S. (1987) Inflammatiom . In Basic Immunology . Chapter 12 : 212. Elsevier
- SCHAECHTER, M., MEDOFF, G., and DSCHLESSINGER, D. (1989) *In* Mechanisms of microbial disease .ISBN 0-683-07607-8 . Williams and Wilkins International Edition .
- SCHLEIFER and KILPPER-BALZ (1987) Cited by G.Colman in *Streptococcus* and *Lactobacillus*. p 120. Topley and Wilson of Bacteriology, Virology, and Immunity, Volume 2, 1990.
- SCHLIEVERT, P. M and WATSON, D. W. (1979) Biogenic amine involvement in pyrogenicity and enhancement of lethal endotoxin shock by group A streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxin. Proceedings of Society for Experimental Biological Medicine. <u>162</u>:
- SCHUTZ, J. W. (1887) Archiv fir Pathologische Anatomie und Physiologie und fur Klinische Medizine <u>107</u>: 356.
- SCHWAB, J. H. (1956) An intracellular haemolysin of group A streptococci. II. Comparative properties of intracellular haemolysin , streptolysin S and streptolysin O . Journal of Bacteriology <u>71</u>: 100-107.

SCHWAB, J. H and CROMARTIE, W. J. (1960) Immunological studies on a polysaccharide complex of group A streptococci having a direct toxic effect on connective tissues . Journal of Experimental

Medicine <u>111</u> : 295-307.

- SCHWAB, J. H. and OHANIAN , B. S. (1966) Current research on Group A streptococcus ed. Caravano. R. 269 .
- SCHWYN, B., and NEILANDS, J.B. (1987) Universal chemical assay for the detection and determination of siderophores. Analytical Biochemistry <u>160</u>: 47-56.

SHERMAN, J. M. (1937) The streptococci . Bacteriological Reviews 1: 3-97.

- SIMONSON, C., BRENER, D., and DEVOE, I.W. (1982). Expression of a highaffinity mechanism for acquisition of transferrin iron by *N. meningitidis*. Infection and Immunity, <u>36</u>: 107-113.
- SNYDER, I.S. (1960). Cited by Ginsburg in streptolysin S . In microbial toxins . p 99-71. Edited by MONTIE, T.C., KADIS, S. and AJIL, S.J. Volume III.
- SMITH, F. (1937) The relation of peptone to production of haemolysin of streptococci . Journal of Bacteriology <u>34</u>: 585-601.
- STEVEN, D. T., FRANK, P. Z., and JOSEPH, S. S. (1988) Characterization of Nformyl-methionyl-Leucyl-phenylalanine receptors on human neutrophils. The Journal of Immunology <u>141</u>: 3937-3944.
- STEWART, S. (1987) Inflammation. In Basic Immunology. Elsevier Science Publishing Company, Inc (New York).
- STOLLERMAN , H. G. (1989) Rhemuatic fever . *In* Text Book of Rheumatology, WILLIAM, KELLEY , EDWARD D. HARRIS, SHAUN, RUDDX, and

CLEMENT. B. SLEDGE (eds).

SPITZNAGEL, J. K., (1983) Microbial interactions with neutrophils .

-200-

Reviews of Infectious Diseases 5(supplement 4): 806-822.

- SULLIUVAN, W.G and MANDELL,L.G. (1980) Interactions of human neutrophils with leucotoxic streptococci. Infection and Immunity. 30 272-280.
- TAKETO, Y. and TAKETO, A. (1967) Oncolytic activity of streptococci with special reference to "Cell bound" haemolysin . Journal of Biochemistry (Tokyo) <u>61</u>: 450-459.
- TAKETO, Y. and TAKETO, A. (1978) Effect of several inhibitors on synthesis of SLS in haemolytic streptococcus . Japan Journal of Experimetal Medicine: 48: 447-560.
- TANAKA, K. (1958) Biochemical studies on SLS .IV. Formation of active substance for streptolysin S and its properties . Journal of Biochemistry (Tokyou) <u>45</u>: 109-121.
- TANAKA, K., EGAMI, F., TAKAYOCHI, H., JEANETTE, WINTER, BERNHEIMER, A., SANE, MII, PRISCILLA, J., ORTIZ, and SEVEROOCHOA. (1958) Induction of streptolysin S formation by biosynthetic polyribonucleotide. Biochem et Biophys Acta. <u>25</u>: 663-665
- TARANTA, A., CUPPAARI, G. and QUAGLIATA, F. (1968) High lymphocyte transformation with non-haemolytic streptococcal product. Nature (London) <u>219</u>: 757-758.
- TARANTA, A., CUPPAARI, G. and QUAGLIATA, F. (1969) Dissociation of haemolytic and lymphocyte-transferming activities of streptolysin S preparations. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>129</u>: 605-622.
- TILLETT, W. S. and GARNER , R. L. (1933) The fibrinolytic activity of haemolytic streptococci . Journal of Experimental Medicine 58:485.

-201-

- TILLETT, W. S., SHERRY, S. and CHRISTENSEN , L. R. (1948) Streptococcal desoxyribonuclease : significance in lysis of purulent exudates and production by strains of haemolytic streptococci Proc . Soc. exp . biol. , N. Y <u>68</u>: 184-188.
- TODD, E. W. (1938) Lethal toxins of haemolytic streptococci and their antibodies . British Journal of Experimental Pathology <u>19</u>:367-378.
- TOP,F.H. and WANNAMAKER ,L.W. (1968) The serum opacity reaction of *Streptococcus pyogenes*: the demonstration of multiple strainspecific lipoproteinase antigens . Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>127</u>: 1013-34
- TOWBIN, H. and GORDAN, J. (1984) Immunoblotting and dot immunobindingcurrent status and outlook . Journal of Immunological Methods <u>72</u>: 313-340.
- VERSTRAETA, W., BRUYNEL, B., and WOESTYNE, V. (1989) Lactic acid bacteria: Microorganisms able to grow in the absence of availble iron and copper. Biotechnology Letters . <u>11</u>: 401-406.
- VILLARREAL, H. JR., FISCHETTI, V. A., VAN DE RIJIN., and ZABRISKIE, J. B., (1979) The occurrence of a protein in the extracellular products of streptococci isolated from patients with acute glomerulonephritis. Journal of Experimental Diseases <u>149</u>: 459-472.
- WANNAMAKER.L.W., (1959) The paradox of the antibody response to streptodornase (streptodornase, streptococcal DNase streptococcal deoxyribonuclease). American Journal of Medicine <u>27</u>: 567-575.

WANNAMAKER.L.W., HAYES, B, and YASMINEH, W. (1967) Streptococcal

-202-

nuclease, further studies on the A, B, C enzyme. Journal of Experimental Medicine. <u>126</u>: 497-508.

- WANNAMAKER, L. W. (1983) Streptococcal Toxins. Reviews of Infectious Diseases <u>5</u>: S723.
- WANNAMAKER.L.W., and P.M. SCHLIEVERT. (1988) Exotoxins of group A streptococci . P. 267-295. *In* M.C.Hardegree and A.T.Tu (ed) . Bacterial toxins. Marcel Dekker. Inc., New York .
- WATSON, K.C. (1960) Host-parasite factors in group A streptococcal infections: pyrogenic and other effects of immunologic distinct exotoxins related to scarlet fever toxins . Journal of Experimental Medicine . <u>III</u>: 255-284.
- WEICHSELBAUM, A. (1886) The elements of pathological history with special reference to practical methods. Translated by W.R.Dawson, London; 1895, Longmans, gren & Co. p 47.
- WEISS, J., VICTOR, M., STENDHAL, O. and ELSBACH, P. (1982) Killing of gram negative bacteria by polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Role of an O<sub>2</sub>-independent bactericidal system. Journal of Clinical Investigation. <u>69</u>: 959-70.
- WEISSMANN, G., KEISER, H. and BERNHEIMER , A.W. (1963) Studies on liposomoes III. The effects of streptolysin O and S on the release of acid hydrolases from a granular fraction of rabbit liver. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>III</u>: 255-260.
- WEISSMANN, G., BECHER, B. and THOMAS, W. (1964) Studies on liposomes V. The effects of streptolysins and other haemolytic agents on isolated leucocyte granules. Journal of Cell Biology <u>22</u> : 115-126.

WEISSMANN, G., SMOLLEN, J. E. and KORCHAK, H. M. (1980) Release of

inflammatory mediators from stimulated neutrophils . New England Journal of Medicine <u>303</u>: 27-34.

- WELD, J. T. (1934) The toxic properties of serum extracts of haemolytic streptococci. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>59</u>:83-95.
- WEST , S.E.H., and SPARLING, P.F. (1985) . Response of Neisseria gonorrhoeae to iron limitation : alteration in expression of membrane proteins without apparent siderophore production . Infection and Immunity <u>47</u>: 388-394.
- WHITE, G.P., BAILEY-WOOD, R., and JACOBS, A. (1976) The effect of chelating agents on cellular iron metabolism. Clinical Science and Molecular Medicine <u>50</u>: 145-52.
- WHITTENBURY, R. (1978) In Streptococci (Edited by Skinner F.A. and Quesnel L.B.), pp. 51-64. Academic Press, New York.
- WILKSIM, D. J., BANGHAM, A. D. (1964) The effect of some metal ions on <u>in</u> <u>vitro</u> phagocytosis . Journal of the Reticuloendothelial Society 1: 233-42.
- WILKINSON.B.J., KIM, Y., PETERSON, P.K., QUIE, P.G., MICHAEL, A.F. (1978) Activation of complement by cell surface components of Staphylococcus aureus. Infection and Immunity <u>20</u> 388:92.
- WILSON, C. D. and SALT, G. F. (1978) Streptococci in animal disease. *In* Streptococci. F. A. SKINNER and L. B. QUENSEL (eds), Academic Press, London.
- WINDER, F. G., and O'HARA, C. (1962) Effects of deficiency and of zinc on the composition of *Mycobacterium symegmatis*. Biochemical Journal <u>82</u>: 98.
- YIN, H. L., and STOSSEL, T. P. (1982) The mechanism of phagocytosis . *In*: Karnovsky, M. L. and BOLIS, L., eds. Phagocytosis . Past and future.

New York: Academic Press, 13-27

- YOUNG, J. D., UNKELESS, J. C., and COHN, Z. A. (1985) Functional ion channel formation by mouse macrophage IgG Fc receptor triggered by specific ligands. Journal of Cell Biochemistry <u>29</u>: 289-97.
- ZABRISKIE, J. B. (1964) The role of temperate bacteriophage in the production of erythrogenic toxin by group A streptococci . Journal of Experimental Medicine. <u>119</u>: 761-780.

-204a-

- AKAO, T., AKAO, T., KOBASHI, K., and LAI, C. Y. (1983) The role of protease in streptolysin S formation. Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics <u>223</u>: 556-561.
- ANTHONY, K. C (1986) Living light: chemiluminescence in the research and clinical laboratory. TIBS II March. 104-108.
- ARBUTHNOTT, J. P (1982) In "Molecular action of toxins and viruses" (Eds. P. COHEN and S. VAN HEYINGEN) 107-129.
- ARBUTHNOTT, J. P., SYMINGTON, D. A. (1973) The action of streptolysin S on mouse liver mitochondria. Journal of Medical Microbiology <u>6</u>:225-234.
- ARCHIBALD, F. S., and FRIDOVICH, I. (1981) Manganese and defenses against oxygen toxicity in *Lactobacillus plantarum* Journal of Bacteriology. <u>145</u>: 422-451.
- BEACHEY, E. H., and STOLLERMAN, G. H. (1971) Toxic effects of streptococcal M protein on platelets and polymorphonuclear leukocytes in human blood. Journal of Experimental Medicine <u>134</u>: 351-365.
- BERGEYS MANUAL OF SYSTEMATIC BACTERIOLOGY (1986) In Pyogenic Haemolytic Streptococci by Jiri Rotta p1047-1054.
- BERNHEIMER, A. W. (1983) Lipid-specific toxins from bacteria, insects and marine invertebrates. Transactions of the New York Academy of Sciences, series II <u>41</u>: 25-34.
- BJORN, M. J., IGLEWSKI, B. H., IVES, S. K., SADOFF, J. C., and VASIL, M. L. (1978) Effects of iron on yields of exotoxins A in cultures of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PA-103. Infection and Immunity <u>19</u>: 785-791.
- BORINSIDE, G. H., BOUIS, P.J., and COHN JR., I (1968) Heamoglobin and Escherichia coli, a lethal intraperitoneal combination. Journal of Bacteriology <u>95</u>: 1567-1571.
- BRITTON, L., MALINOWSKI, D. P. and FRIDOVICH, I. (1978) Superoxide dismutase and oxygen metabolism in *Streptococcus faecalis* and comparisons with other organisms. Journal of Bacteriology <u>134</u>: 229-236.
- BROCK, J. H. and JANNET, N. G., (1983) The effect of desferrioxamine on the growth of Staphylococcus aureus, Yersinia enterocolitica and Streptococcus faecalis in human serum: uptake of desferrioxaminebound iron. Federation of European Microbiological Societies Microbiological Immunology <u>20</u>: 439-422.
- BROCK, J. H., LICEAGA, J., and KONTOGHIORGHES, G. H. (1988) The effect of synthetic iron chelators on bacterial growth in human serum. Federation of European Microbiological Societies Microbiological Immunology <u>47</u>: 55-60.
- CAPARON, M.G., STEPHENS, D.S., OLSEN, A. and SCOTT, J.R. (1991) Role of M protein in adherence of group A streptococci. Infection and Immunity <u>59</u>: 1811-1817.
- CZUPRYNSKI, C. J. and NOEL, E. J. (1990) Influence of *Pasteurella* haemolytica A1 crude leukotoxin on bovine neutrophils

chemiluminescence. Infection and Immunity 58: 1485-1487.

- DUNCAN, J. L. (1983) Streptococcal growth and toxin production *in vivo*. Infection and Immunity <u>40</u>: 501-505.
- KOYAMA, J., EGAMI, F. (1963) Biochemical studies on streptolysin S' formed in the presence of yeast riobonucleic acid. The Journal of Biochemistry <u>53</u>: 147-154.
- LACKIE, J. M. (1977) The aggregation of rabbit polumorphyonuclear leukocytes (PMN's): effects of agents which affect the acute inflammatory response and correlation with secretory activity. Inflammation <u>2</u>: 1-15.
- LOFGREN, S., TARNVIK, A., CARLSSON, J. (1980) Demonstration of opsonizing antibodies to *Francisella tularensis* by leukocyte chemiluminescence. Infection and Immunity <u>29</u>: 329-334.
- MARTINEZ, J.L., IRIBARREN, A.D., and BAQUERO, F. (1990) Mechanisms of iron acquisition and bacterial virulence. Federation of European Microbiological Societies <u>75</u>: 45-56.
- MAY, P. M., and WILLIAMS, D. R. (1980) The inorganic chemistry of iron metabolism. *In* Iron in Biocemistry and Medicine (Eds. A. JACOBS and M. WORWOOD), Vol. II, pp. 1-28. Academic Press, London.
- M<sup>C</sup>CALL, C. E., BASS, D. A., DECHATELTI, L. R., LINK, JR., A, S. and MANN, M. (1979) In vitro responses of human neutrophils to Nformyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine: correlation with effects of acute bacterial infection. Journal of Infectious Diseases <u>140</u>: 277-286.
- MULLER, J. H., and MILLER, P. A. (1945) Production of tetanal toxin. Journal of Immunology <u>50</u>: 377-384.
- NEILANDS, J. B. (1974) Iron and its role in microbial physiology. In Microbial iron metabolism. A comprehensive treatise. Academic Press New York and London. 3-35.
- NEILANDS, J. B. (1981) Microbial iron compounds. Annual Review of Biochemistry <u>50</u>: 715-731.
- PHILLIPS, G. N., FLICKER, P. F., COHEN, C., MANJULA, B. N., and FISCHETTI, V. A. (1981) Streptococcal M-protein: alpha-helical coiled-coil structure and arrangement on the cell surface. Proceedings of National Academy Sciences USA <u>78</u>: 4689-4693.
- PREZ DES, R. M., BRYAN, C. S., HAWIGER, J., and COLLEY, D. G. (1975) Function of classical and alternate pathways of human complement in serum treated with ethylene glycol tetraacetic acid and MgCl<sub>2</sub>-ethylene glycol tetraacetic acid. Infection and Immunity <u>11</u>: 1235-1243.
- RITCHEY, T. W., and SEELEY, H. W. (1976) Distribution of cytochrome-like respiration in streptococci. Journal of General Microbiology 93: 195-203.
- ROSS, D., BOT, A. AM., VAN SCHAIK, M. LG., DEBOER, M., and DAHA, M. R. (1981) Interaction between human neutrophils and zymosan particles: the role of opsonins and divalent cations. Journal of Immunology <u>126</u>: 433-40.

RUSSEL, L. M., and HOLMES, R. K. (1983) Role of iron in regulating

synthesis of bacterial toxins. *In* Microbiology 1983 (Ed. D. Schlessinger), pp. 359-362. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, DC.

- SCHADE, A. L. (1963) Significance of serum iron for growth, biological characteristics and metabolism of *Staphylococcus aureus*. Biochemische Zeitschrift <u>338</u>: 140-148.
- SMITH, C. W., HOLLERS, J. C., PATRICK, R. A., and HASSETT, C. (1979) Motility and adhesiveness in human neutrophils. Effects of chemotaxic factors. Journal of Clinical Investigation <u>63</u>: 221-9.
- SMITH, L. (1954) Bacterial cytochromes. Bacteriologicl Reviews <u>18</u>: 106-130.
- TANNER, F. W., VOJNOVICH, C., and VANLANEN, J. M (1945) Cited by P. ANN LIGHT and ROGER A. CLEGG (1974) In Metabolism in iron-limited growth. p. 35-64. Microbial Iron Metabolism, A Comprehensive Treatise. Edited by J. B. Neilands, 1974. New York and London.
- VAN HEYNINGEN, W. E., and GLADSTONE, G. P. (1953) The neurotoxin of Shigella shigae. 3. The effect of iron on the production of the toxin. British Journal of Experimental Pathology <u>34</u>: 221-229.

WEINBERG, E. D. (1978) Iron and Infection. Microbial Reviews 42:45-66.

- WILLIAMS, P., and BROWN, M. R. W. (1986) Influence of iron restriction on growth and the expression of outer membrane proteins by *Haemophilus influenzae* and *H. parainfluenzae*. Federation of European Microbiological Letters, 33: 153-157.
- YANCEY, R. J., and FINKELSTEIN, R. A. (1981) Siderophore production by pathogenic *Nesseria* spp. Infection and Immunity <u>32</u>: 600-608.
- ZIGMOND, S. H. (1978) Chemotaxis by polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Journal of Cell Biology <u>77</u>: 269-87.

# APPENDICES

•

'

-205-

### 15.1. Media and Diluents

<u>Media</u>

A. Brain Heart Infusion broth (BHI. BM) g/1

|                            | OXOID  | DIFCO      |
|----------------------------|--------|------------|
| Calf Brain Infusion Salts  | 12. 5g | 20.⊹g      |
| Beef Heart infusion Solids | 5.0g   | 25′ g      |
| Protease peptone           | 10. 0g | 10g        |
| Sodium Chloride            | 5.0g   | 5 <b>g</b> |
| Dextrose                   | 2. 0g  | 2g         |
| Disodium phosphate         | 2. 5g  | 2.5.g      |

Either of the medium preparations was supplemented with 1% (w/v) maltose and 2% (w/v) sodium bicarbonate .

# B. Chemical Defined Medium (C.D.M.)

A modification of the original C.D.M (1980) composition was used .

| <u>Chemical</u>                          | <u>Concentration (mg/L)</u> |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. FeSO <sub>4</sub> . 7H <sub>2</sub> O | 5                           |
| K <sub>2</sub> HPO <sub>4</sub>          | 200                         |
| KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub>          | 1,000                       |
| MgS04.7H20                               | 700                         |
| 2. Casamino acids ( see below)           |                             |
| 3. p.Aminobenzoic acid                   | 0.2                         |
| Biotin                                   | 0.2                         |
| Folic acid                               | 0.8                         |
| Niacinamide                              | 1.0                         |

|    | β-nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide | 2, 5    |
|----|-------------------------------------|---------|
|    | Pantothenate calcium salt           | 2.0     |
|    | Pyridoxal                           | 1.0     |
|    | Pyridoxamine dihydrochloride        | 1.0     |
|    | Riboflavin                          | 2.0     |
|    | Thiamine hydrochloride              | 1.0     |
|    | Vitamin B <sub>12</sub>             | 0.1     |
| 4. | Glucose                             | 10, 000 |
| 5. | Adenine                             | 20      |
|    | Guanine hydrochloride               | 20      |
|    | Uracil                              | 20      |
| 6. | $CaCl_2, 6H_2O$                     | 10      |
|    | $NaC_2H_3O_2$ , $3H_2O$             | 4, 500  |
|    | 1-Cysteine                          | 500     |
|    | $NaH_2PO_4$ . $H_2O$                | 3, 195  |
|    | Na <sub>2</sub> HPO <sub>4</sub>    | 7, 350  |

Stock Solution

**Sterilisation** 

### Storage

Make up 1 as four separate solutions.

1a. make up K<sup>+</sup> salts as 2x solutions

| ;.e. given weights in 500ml              | 15psi/15 min | 4°C |
|------------------------------------------|--------------|-----|
| 1b. make up $MgSO_4$ , $7H_2O$ as $100x$ | 15psi/15 min | 4°C |
| 1c. make up $FeSO_4$ , $7H_2O$ as $100x$ | 15psi/15 min | 4°C |
| 1d. make up MnSO <sub>4</sub> , as 100x  | 15psi/15 min | 4°C |

2. make up 20% solution of casamino acids

|    | and tryptophan (2000mg/l). This is a |                         |       |
|----|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------|
|    | 20x stock solution                   | Filter (0.45µm)         | 4°C   |
| з. | make up vitamins separately as 200x  |                         |       |
|    | conc., if they do not dissolve add a |                         |       |
|    | little NaOH solution                 | Filter (0.45µm)         | 4°C   |
| 4. | make up a 50% solution of glucose    | Filter or 10 psi/10min  | 4°C   |
| 5. | make up as 500x conc in HCL, dilute  |                         |       |
|    | to 100x                              | Filter(0.45µm)          | -20°C |
| 6. | make up the first three compnents    |                         |       |
|    | separately as 100x concentrates;     |                         |       |
|    | the other are made up together .     |                         |       |
|    | make up 5x cysteine solution         | Filter sterilization    | 4°C   |
|    | make up 5x remainder a               | utoclaved 15 psi/15 min | 4°C   |

### Important notes

When making up mixtures add salts in the given order . Do not add another salt until the previous one has dissolved completely .

When making up the final medium add the solutions in the correct order .

Adjust the final pH to 7.0 and filter sterilize the medium .

### 15.2. Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis (Laemmli, 1970)

### A. Stock solutions

| (;) Acrylamide/Bis           |        |
|------------------------------|--------|
| Acrylamide                   | 30g    |
| N,N-bis-methylene acrylamide | 0.8g   |
| Distilled water              | 100 ml |

#### -208-

| (;;) Lower Buffer (4X concentre | tion) pH 8.9 |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| Tris                            | 18. 1g       |
| SDS                             | 0. 4g        |
| Distilled water                 | 70 ml        |

The pH was adjusted to 8.9 with concentrated HCl and the final volume made up to 100ml with distilled water .

(;;;) Upper buffer (4X concentration ) pH 6.8

| Tris            | 6. 06g |
|-----------------|--------|
| SDS             | 0. 4g  |
| Distilled water | 70 ml  |

The pH was adjusted to 6.8 with concentrated HCl and the final volume made up to 100ml with distilled water .

#### (;v) Temed (undiluted stock)

#### (v) Ammonium Persulphate Solution

A 10% solution was made up freshly (50mg in 0.5 ml distilled water ).

#### (v;) Solubilising Buffer for proteins

| Glycerol          | 10 ml |
|-------------------|-------|
| 2-mercaptoethanol | 5 ml  |
| SDS               | 3 g   |
| Bromophenol Blue  | 0.01g |

Upper Buffer ( 1 in 8 dilution of (;;;) to 100 ml

# (v;;) Running Buffer pH 8.3

| Tris            | 3.03    |
|-----------------|---------|
| Glycine         | 14.4    |
| SDS             | 1. Og   |
| Distilled water | 1000 ml |

The pH was adjusted to 8.3 with concentrated HCl .

### (v;;;) Staining Solution

| Coomasie Blue R250  | 1.  | 25g |
|---------------------|-----|-----|
| 50% (v/v) methanol  | 454 | ml  |
| Glacial acetic acid | 46  | ml  |

# (;x) Destaining Solution

| Methanol            | 50  | ml |
|---------------------|-----|----|
| Glacial Acetic Acid | 75  | ml |
| Distilled water     | 875 | ml |

# B, Slab-Gel Preparations

# (;) Lower Gel-Separating Gel

| 12.5%                          | (1.5mm gel)   | 15% (0.8mm gel) |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Lower Buffer (4X)              | 10 ml         | 5 ml            |
| Distilled water                | 13.4 ml       | 5 ml            |
| Acrylamide/Bis                 | 16.6 ml       | 10 ml           |
| After degassing for 20 minutes | the following | were added:     |
| Ammonium Persulphate solution  | 200 µl        | 200 µl          |
| Tened                          | 20 µ1         | 20 µl           |

-210-

(;;) Upper Gel-Stacking Gel(4.5%)

| Upper Gel Buffer (4X)              | 2.5 ml                |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Distilled water                    | 6 <b>m</b> 1          |
| Acrylamide/Bis                     | 1.5 ml                |
| After degassing for 10 minutes the | following were added: |
| Ammonium persulphate solution      | 30 µl                 |
| Temed                              | 20 µl                 |

### 15.3. <u>Buffers and Diluents</u>

(;) Induction Buffer (IB) pH. 7.0

| KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> | 100 mM |
|---------------------------------|--------|
| MgSO <sub>4</sub>               | 2 mM   |

MgS0₄

The final volume of 40ml was adjusted to pH 7.0 with NaOH and

then was supplemented with 30 mM maltose.

### (;;) Blood Washing Buffer pH 6.8

| NaH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> | 150 mM |
|----------------------------------|--------|
| Na <sub>2</sub> HPO <sub>4</sub> | 150 mM |
| NaCl                             | 150 mM |
|                                  |        |

Mix equal volumes of sodiun phosphate buffer + NaCl .

pH was adjusted to 6.8 and was kept at  $4\,^{\rm o}{\rm C}$  .

# (;;;) Hepes Buffered Saline (HBS)

| <u>Chemical</u>                       | Concentration(g/1) |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| NaCl                                  | 8. 00g             |
| XC1                                   | 0. 40g             |
| MgC1 <sub>2</sub> . 6H <sub>2</sub> O | 0. 20g             |
| CaCl <sub>2</sub>                     | 0. 14g             |
| Glucose                               | 1.00g              |

HEPES

#### 2. 388g

Ingredients were dissolved in 900 ml of distilled, deionised water and the pH adjusted to 7.4 with 1 NaOH. The volume was then made up to 1 litre with distilled, deionised water and the preparation autoclaved at 121°C for 15 minutes at 15 p.s.i. The divalent cation-free HBS-EDTA solution was prepared by the omission of the Ca-and Mg-containing salts and the addition of 0.292 g of monosodium EDTA.

#### (;v) <u>Phosphate-buffered saline (Dulbeco A)</u>

| <u>Chemical</u>      | <u>Concentration(g L<sup>-1</sup>)</u> |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| NaCl                 | 8.00g                                  |
| KCl                  | 0. 20g                                 |
| NaH <sub>2</sub> PO4 | 0. 20g                                 |
| Na2HPO4              | 1. 15g                                 |

Phosphate-buffered saline tablets (Oxoid) were used . Each tablet was added to 100 ml of distilled water and the solution autoclaved at 121°C for 15 min at p.s.i . The pH of the subsequent solution was 7.3 .

### (v) Buffer for protein immunoblotting

| <u>Transfer buffer</u> |        |
|------------------------|--------|
| Tris                   | 3.03g  |
| glycine                | 14. 4g |
| 20% (v/v) methanol to  | 1000ml |

(v;) <u>MgEGTA</u> The preparation of 100 mM stock saline solution of ethylene glycol tetraacetic (EGTA) was supplemented with with an equimolar concentration of MgCl<sub>2</sub> (MgEGTA). In order to dissolve EGTA in saline, it is necessary to heat the mixture to  $60^{\circ}$ C. add 5M NaOH dropwise until the EGTA goes into solution, titrate back to pH 7.45 with 1 N HCl, and then bring to final volume with normal saline. The stock solution was stored at 4° C; 0.1 ml of 100 mM solution was added to 1ml of serum to yield a final concentration of approximately 10 mM. (Fine <u>et al.</u>, 1972).

-212-

I should like to thank the following for their permission to use copyright material.

- Table 1 Differential reactions of species of *Streptococcus*. From Rota , 1986 . Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology .
- Table 2 Comparison of biological properties of streptolysin O.
- Table 3 From J.Jeljaszewicz *et al.*, 1978. Rights and Permissions, Academic Press, INC. Orlando, Florida 32887
- Table 4 Role of iron in microorganism. From Messenger and Ratledge (1986)
- Table 5 Bacteria whose virulence in experimental infections is enhanced by injecting iron compounds . From Griffiths (1987) . Reproduced with the publishers' permission from John Wiley & Sons Limited .
- Fig. 2 Schematic diagram of group A *Streptococcus*. From Patrick R. Murray (1990). Reproduced with the publishers' permission from The C.V. Mosby Company.
- Fig. 3 Electron micrograph of ultrathin sections of group A streptococci exhibiting M-protein fibrils on the cell surface . From Fischetti , 1989 . Reproduced with the permission of Dr. V. A . Fischetti , The Rockfeller University , New York, New York 10021
- Fig. 4 Extracellular macromolecular substances identified in culture fluids of group A streptococci. From Alouf (1986).

Reproduced with the publishers' permission from Subsidiary Rights Dept. Pergamon Press , Oxford .

- Fig. 5 Spread and multiplication . From Schaechter *et al.*, 1989 . Reproduced with the publishers' permission from Williams and Wilkins, Co. Baltimore .
- Fig. 6 A highly simplified scheme of PMN activation after FMLP stimulation . From Sawyer, *et al.*, 1989 . Reproduced with the permission of D. W. Sawyer , Department of Medicine, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, Virginia.
- Fig. 7 Details of the classical and alternate pathways of complement activation . From Stewart , 1987 . Reproduced with the publishers' permission from Elsevier Science Publishing Company, Inc., 655 Avenue of the Americas, New York, N.Y. 100010.
- Fig.8 Schematic drawing of steps in phagocytosis . From Stewart , 1987 . Reproduced with the publishers' permission from Elsevier Science Publishing Company, Inc., 655 Avenue of the Americas, New York, N.Y. 100010.
- Fig.9 Schematic representation of two ways by which pathogenic bacteria obtain iron from iron-binding proteins . From Griffiths (1987) . Reproduced with the publishers' permission from John Wiley & Sons Limited .
- Fig. 10 Schematic model of low and high affinity iron assimilation pathways in aerobic and facultative anaerobic microorganism . From Neilands (1984) .

Reproduced with the publishers' permission from

Blackwell Scientific Publication Limited .

